2

SECOND EDITION

American ENGLISH FILE

Online Practice

Christina Latham-Koenig
Clive Oxenden
Paul Seligson

OXFORD

2

American ENGLISH FILE

Christina Latham-Koenig
Clive Oxenden
Paul Seligson

Paul Seligson and Clive Oxenden are the original co-authors of *English File 1* and *English File 2*

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

		Grammar	Vocabulary	Pronuncia
	1			
4	**A Where are you from?**	word order in questions	common verb phrases, spelling and numbers	vowel sou alphabet
8	**C Mr. and Mrs. Clark and Percy**	present continuous	clothes, prepositions of place	/ə/ and /ər/
10	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 1 Hotel problems			
	2			
12	**A Right place, wrong person**	simple past: regular and irregular verbs	vacations	regular verbs: *-ed* endings
14	**B The story behind the photo**	past continuous	prepositions of time and place: *at, in, on*	sentence stress
16	**C One dark October evening**	time sequencers and connectors	verb phrases	word stress
18	**REVIEW AND CHECK 1&2**			
	3			
20	**A Plans and dreams**	*be going to* (plans and predictions)	airports	sentence stress and fast speech
22	**B Let's meet again**	present continuous (future arrangements)	verbs + prepositions e.g., *arrive in*	sounding friendly
24	**C What's the word?**	defining relative clauses	expressions for paraphrasing: *like, for example*, etc.	pronunciation in a dictionary
26	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 2 Restaurant problems			
	4			
28	**A Parents and teenagers**	present perfect + *yet* and *already*	housework, *make* or *do*?	/y/ and /dʒ/
30	**B Fashion and shopping**	present perfect or simple past? (1)	shopping	*c* and *ch*
32	**C Lost weekend**	*something, anything, nothing*, etc.	adjectives ending *-ed* and *-ing*	/ɛ/, /oʊ/, and /ʌ/
34	**REVIEW AND CHECK 3&4**			
	5			
36	**A No time for anything**	comparative adjectives and adverbs, *as...as*	time expressions: *spend time*, etc.	sentence stress
38	**B Superlative cities**	superlatives (+ *ever* + present perfect)	describing a town or city	word and sentence stress
40	**C How much is too much?**	quantifiers, *too, not enough*	health and the body	/ʌ/, /u/, /aɪ/, and /ɛ/
42	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 3 The wrong shoes			
	6			
44	**A Are you a pessimist?**	*will / won't* (predictions)	opposite verbs	*'ll, won't*
46	**B I'll never forget you**	*will / won't* (decisions, offers, promises)	verb + *back*	word stress: two-syllable verbs
48	**C The meaning of dreaming**	review of verb forms: present, past, and future	adjectives + prepositions	the letters *ow*
50	**REVIEW AND CHECK 5&6**			

	Grammar	Vocabulary	Pronunciation
7			
A How to...	uses of the infinitive	verbs + infinitive: *try to, forget to*, etc.	weak form of *to*, linking
B Being happy	uses of the gerund (verb + *-ing*)	verbs + gerund	the letter *i*
C Learn a language in a month!	*have to, don't have to, must, must not, can't*	modifiers: *a little (bit), really*, etc.	sentence stress
PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 4 At the pharmacy			
8			
A I don't know what to do!	*should*	*get*	/ʊ/ and /u/, sentence stress
B If something can go wrong,...	*if* + present, *will* + base form (first conditional)	confusing verbs	linking
C You must be mine	possessive pronouns	adverbs of manner	sentence rhythm
REVIEW AND CHECK 7&8			
9			
A What would you do?	*if* + past, *would* + base form (second conditional)	animals	word stress
B I've been afraid of it for years	present perfect + *for* and *since*	phobias and words related to fear	sentence stress
C Born to sing	present perfect or simple past? (2)	biographies	word stress, /ɔr/
PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 5 Getting around			
10			
A The mothers of invention	passive	verbs: *invent, discover*, etc.	/ʃ/, *-ed*, sentence stress
B Could do better	*used to*	school subjects	*used to / didn't use to*
C Mr. Indecisive	*might*	word building: noun formation	diphthongs
REVIEW AND CHECK 9&10			
11			
A Bad losers	expressing movement	sports, expressing movement	sports
B Are you a morning person?	word order of phrasal verbs	phrasal verbs	linking
C What a coincidence!	*so, neither* + auxiliaries	similarities	sentence stress, /ð/ and /θ/
PRACTICAL ENGLISH Episode 6 Time to go home			
12			
A Strange but true!	past perfect	verb phrases	contractions: *had / hadn't*
B Gossip is good for you	reported speech	*say* or *tell*?	double consonants
C The *American English File* quiz	questions without auxiliaries	review	review
REVIEW AND CHECK 11&12			

Communication
Writing
Listening

126 **Grammar Bank**
150 **Vocabulary Bank**

164 **Irregular verbs**
166 **Sound Bank**

G word order in questions
V common verb phrases, spelling and numbers
P vowel sounds, the alphabet

What do you do?

I'm in college.

1A Where are you from?

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING common verb phrases

1 HOME AND FAMILY

- Where _____ you from?
- Where _____ you born?
- Where do you _____?
- Do you _____ in a house or an apartment?
- Do you _____ any brothers and sisters?
- Do you _____ any pets?

2 JOB / STUDIES

- What do you _____?
- Where do you _____?
- Do you _____ your job?
- What school / college do you _____ to?
- What year _____ you in?
- Can you _____ any other languages? Which?
- Where did you _____ English before?

3 FREE TIME

- What kind of music do you _____ to?
- Do you _____ a musical instrument? Which?
- What TV shows do you _____?
- Do you _____ any sports? Which ones?
- What kinds of books or magazines do you _____?
- How often do you _____ to the movies?
- What did you _____ last weekend?

a Complete the questions with a verb.

b (1 2)) Listen and repeat the Free Time questions. Copy the rhythm.

Sentence stress
Remember that we usually stress the important words in a sentence (the ones that carry important information) and say the other words less strongly, e.g., **Where** are you **from**? **What** do you **do**?

c In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Can you find at least **one** thing from each section that you have in common?

We live in the city.

2 GRAMMAR word order in questions

a Reorder the words to make questions.

1 born where your parents were ?
2 where from teacher our is ?
3 name your how you do spell ?
4 did last you go night out ?

b ➤ p.126 Grammar Bank 1A. Learn more about word order in questions and practice it.

c Stand up and ask different students the first question until somebody says *yes*. Then ask the follow-up question. Continue with the other questions, asking different students.

Do you drink a lot of coffee? *Yes, I do.*
How many cups of coffee do you drink? *Five cups a day.*

Present
/ drink a lot of coffee (or tea)? How many cups...?
/ go to bed early during the week? What time...?
/ spend a long time on Facebook every day? How long...?

Past
/ have a big breakfast today? What...?
/ go somewhere nice on Saturday? Where...?
/ see a good movie last week? What movie...?

3 PRONUNCIATION
vowel sounds, the alphabet

a 1 5 Listen to the sound pictures. What are the words and vowel sounds? Listen and check.

b ➤ p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the typical spellings of these sounds.

c Add these letters to the circles.

d 1 6 Listen and check. Practice saying the letters in each circle.

e Ask and answer with a partner.

- Do you usually get in touch with your friends by phone, email, or Facebook?
- Do you have an iPod or MP3 player? What kind?
- Do you often watch DVDs? What kind?
- Do you watch ESPN, CNN, or MTV?
- Do you have any friends from the US or the UK?

4 SPELLING & NUMBERS

a 1 7 Listen and write six first names.

b ➤ **Communication** *What's his name? How do you spell it?* **A** *p.100* **B** *p.106.*

c How do you say these numbers?

13 30 76 100 150 375 600 1,500 2,000 10,500

d 1 8 Listen and write the numbers.

1 Gate _____ 3 Tel: _____ 5 $_____
2 _____ miles 4 Population: _____

e Interview your partner and complete the form.

Student information	
first name	
last name	
address	
phone number	
email	

G simple present
V describing people: appearance and personality
P final -s / -es

1B Charlotte's choice

I like good books.

He doesn't like sports.

1 VOCABULARY describing people

a (1 9)) Listen to a man describing his girlfriend and check (✓) her picture.

b Listen again. What two questions does Luke's friend ask him? How does Luke answer the second question?

> ***What does she look like? What is she like?***
> *What does she look like?* = Tell me about her appearance (Is she tall / short? What color hair does she have?).
> *What is she like?* = Tell me what kind of person she is (Is she friendly? Is she shy?).

c ➤ **p.150 Vocabulary Bank** *Describing people.*

2 READING

a Who do you think knows you better, your mother (or father) or your best friend? Why?

b Read the introduction and the first paragraph of the article.

1 What is the idea of the experiment?
2 Who is Charlotte?
3 Who are Alice and Katie?
4 What do Alice and Katie have to do? Then what happens?

c Now read what Charlotte says. With a partner guess the meaning of the highlighted words and phrases.

d Cover the text. Can you remember?

1 What does Charlotte like doing?
2 What's she like?
3 What kind of men does / doesn't she like?
4 Who does she think is going to choose better? Why?

Who knows you better – your mother *or* your best friend?

In our weekly experiment, single people who are looking for a partner ask their mother and their best friend to help.

This week's single person is Charlotte Ramirez, a 25-year-old web designer. Her father is Argentinian and her mother is American. She lives in San Francisco, and she doesn't have a partner right now. Her mother, Alice, chooses a man she thinks is perfect for her daughter and her best friend, Katie, chooses another. Then Charlotte goes on a date with each man. Which one does she prefer?

"I love going to the movies, but I often feel like staying at home with a good book," says Charlotte. "I'm very friendly and sociable and I get along well with most people. I think I have a good sense of humor."

"What kind of men do I like? Well, I like interesting men who can make me laugh. Physically, I prefer men with a really nice smile who are taller than me. And I don't usually like men with beards! I like men who are into literature and art, and classical music."

"I'm not sure who is going to choose better for me. Both my mom and my best friend know me very well. Maybe Katie could find me a guy who is physically more compatible, but my mother has known me for longer!"

3 GRAMMAR simple present

a From memory, try to complete the sentences using the simple present.

1 She _____ have a partner right now.
2 She _____ on a date with each man.
3 Which one _____ she prefer?
4 What kind of men _____ I like?
5 I _____ usually like men with beards.

b In pairs, answer the questions.

1 Which letter do you add to most verbs with *he, she,* and *it?*
2 How do the verbs below change with *he, she,* and *it?*
watch | study | go | have
3 What auxiliary verbs do you use to make questions and negatives with...?
a *I | you | we | they* **b** *he | she | it*

c ➤ **p.126 Grammar Bank 1B.** Learn more about the simple present and practice it.

d Can you remember the kind of men Charlotte likes and doesn't like?

e Look at the photos of Alexander and Oliver. Find out about them. ➤ **Communication** *Alexander and Oliver* **A** *p.100* **B** *p.106.*

f Which man do you think is better for Charlotte? Why?

4 LISTENING

a (1)14)) Listen to Charlotte talking about what happened when she met Alexander. What did she think of him? Does she want to see him again?

b Listen again and write down any adjectives or expressions that Charlotte uses to describe his appearance and personality.

c (1)15)) Now repeat for Oliver.

d What does Charlotte decide in the end? Do you agree with her?

5 PRONUNCIATION final -s / -es

a (1)16)) Listen and repeat.

S snake	She likes cats. He works with his parents.
Z zebra	He has brown eyes. She wears jeans.
/ɪz/	She relaxes with boxes of chocolates. He uses glasses to read.

Pronunciation of final -s / -es: verbs and nouns
The final **-s** is pronounced /s/ or /z/. The difference is small.
The final **-es** is pronounced /ɪz/ after *ch, c, g, sh, s, z,* and *x.*

b (1)17)) How do you say the *he | she | it* form of these verbs and the plural of these nouns? Listen and check.

verbs: choose cook go live stop teach
nouns: boy class date friend language parent

6 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Look at the form below and prepare to give this information about your friend.

Do you have a friend who is looking for a partner? Help him / her find one!

Name
Relationship: Single / Divorced / Separated
Age
Job
Appearance
Personality +
–
Likes
Doesn't like
Search

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer about your people. Compare the information. Do you think the two people are compatible?

What's his (her) name?

c ➤ **p.111 Writing** *Describing a person.* Write a description of a person you know.

7 (1)18)) SONG *Ugly* ♫

G present continuous
V clothes, prepositions of place
P /ə/ and /ər/

What's the woman doing?

She's standing in front of the window.

1C Mr. and Mrs. Clark and Percy

1 VOCABULARY clothes

a Look at the pictures. What are the models wearing? Match the words and clothes.

- [ ] boots
- [ ] pants
- [ ] shirt
- [ ] shoes
- [ ] skirt
- [ ] top

b ➤ **p.151 Vocabulary Bank** *Things you wear.*

2 PRONUNCIATION /ə/ and /ər/

a 1 20 Listen to these words and sounds. Practice saying them.

1 computer	bracelet cardigan jacket necklace
2 bird	shirt skirt T-shirt

b Look at the highlighted letters in the words below. Which sound do they have, 1 or 2?

actor chemistry first painter third
arrive imagine world attractive
instrument problem prefer

c 1 21 Listen and check.

d ➤ **p.166 Sound Bank.** Look at the typical spellings for these sounds.

e Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

What clothes do you usually wear...?

- at work / college / school
- when you go out at night
- when you want to relax on the weekend

3 GRAMMAR present continuous

a Look at the painting on page 9 by artist David Hockney (1937–). In pairs, describe the man and the woman.

- What do they look like?
- What are they wearing?
- What are they doing?

b Underline the correct form of the verb, present continuous or simple present.

1 In the painting the man *isn't wearing / doesn't wear* shoes.
2 In some countries women often *wear / are wearing* hats to weddings.
3 In the painting a white cat *sits / is sitting* on the man's knee.
4 My son usually *sits / is sitting* at the back of the class so that the teacher can't see him.

c ➤ **p.126 Grammar Bank 1C.** Learn more about the present continuous and practice it.

d Look at the pictures on page 4. What are the people wearing? What are they doing?

4 LISTENING

a 1 24 Look at the painting *Mr and Mrs Clark and Percy* on page 9 and listen to the audio guide. Focus on the people and things in the painting as they are mentioned.

b Listen again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Percy is the name of the cat.
2 Mr. and Mrs. Clark made clothes for famous people.
3 The painting shows their living room.
4 The painting is very small.
5 Celia is pregnant in the painting.
6 Ossie is putting his feet into the rug because he is cold.
7 The position of the couple in the painting is unusual.
8 The open window is a symbol of the love between them.
9 The cat is a symbol of infidelity.
10 Celia and Ossie later got divorced.
11 Celia doesn't like the painting.
12 Ossie Clark died in 1995.

Celia today.

Mr and Mrs Clark and Percy (1970–71) by David Hockney in the Tate Gallery, London

5 VOCABULARY prepositions of place

a Look at some sentences that describe the painting. Complete them with a word or phrase from the list.

in (x2) on (x2) under in front of behind between
next to on the right on the left in the middle

1 There are two people _____ the room.
2 The woman is standing _____, and the man is sitting _____.
3 _____ of the painting, _____ the man and the woman, there's an open window.
4 A white cat is sitting _____ the man.
5 There's a rug _____ the man's chair.
6 There's a telephone _____ the floor _____ the man's chair.
7 _____ the telephone there's a lamp.
8 _____ the woman there's a table, and a vase with flowers _____ it.

b (1) 25 Listen and check. Then cover the sentences and look at the painting. Say where the things and people are.

6 SPEAKING

Describing a picture (a painting or photo)
When we describe a picture we usually use:
- *There is / There are* to say what is in the picture, e.g., *There is a table and a vase with flowers in it. There are two people.*
- The present continuous to say what the people are doing, e.g., *The woman is standing and the man is sitting.*
- Sometimes we combine *There is* and the present continuous, e.g., *There is a woman standing near the window.*

a ➤ **Communication** *Describe and draw* **A** *p.100* **B** *p.106.* Describe your picture for your partner to draw.

b In small groups, ask and answer the questions.
1 Which of the three paintings in this lesson do you prefer? Why?
2 What pictures or posters do you have on the wall in your bedroom or living room?
3 Do you have a favorite painting? What? Can you describe it?
4 Do you have a favorite painter? Who?
5 Do you (or did you) paint or draw? What kinds of things?

Practical English Hotel problems

EPISODE 1

1 VIDEO INTRODUCTION

a Look at the photos. Describe Jenny and Rob.

b 1 26 Watch or listen to Jenny. Number the pictures 1–6 in the order she mentions them.

c Watch or listen again and answer the questions.

1 What does Jenny do?
2 Where did she go a few months ago?
3 Who's Rob Walker?
4 What did they do together?
5 What does she think of Rob?
6 What's Rob's one negative quality?
7 How long is Rob going to be in New York?

2 VIDEO CALLING RECEPTION

a 1 27 Cover the dialogue and watch or listen. Who does Rob call? Why?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Hello, reception.	Hello. This is room 613.
How can I _____ you?	There's a problem with the air-conditioning. It isn't working, and it's very hot in my room.
I'm sorry, sir. I'll _____ somebody up to look at it right now.	Thank you.
Good _____, reception.	Hello. I'm sorry to bother you again. This is room 613.
How can I help you?	I have a problem with the Wi-Fi. I can't get a signal.
I'm sorry, sir. I'll _____ you through to IT.	Thanks.

c 1 28 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

> *I'll*
> **A** There's a problem with the air-conditioning.
> **B** I'll send somebody to look at it.
> *I'll* = I will. We use *I'll* + verb to offer to do something.

d Practice the dialogue in **2b** with a partner.

e In pairs, role-play the dialogue.

A (book open) You are the receptionist. **B** (book closed) You are a guest. You have two problems with your room (think about what they are). **A** Offer to do something about **B**'s problems. You begin with *Hello, reception.*

f Change roles.

3 VIDEO JENNY AND ROB MEET AGAIN

a 1 29 That evening Jenny goes to the hotel to meet Rob, and they go out for something to eat. Watch or listen and mark the sentences **T** or **F**.

1 Rob says he doesn't like the hotel.
2 Jenny is going to show him around the city tomorrow.
3 Barbara is Jenny's boss.
4 Rob is hungry.
5 It's four in the morning for Rob.
6 They're going to meet at eleven.
7 Jenny thinks that Rob is going to get lost.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c Look at the **Social English phrases**. Can you remember any of the missing words?

> **Social English phrases**
> **Jenny** Here you _____ at last.
> **Rob** It's _____ to be here.
> **Jenny** Do you have a _____ view?
> **Jenny** Barbara's _____ forward to meeting you.
> **Jenny** You _____ be really tired.
> **Rob** I guess you're _____.
> **Rob** By the _____...
> **Jenny** It's _____ to see you, too.

d 1 30 Watch or listen and complete the phrases.

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

> **Can you...?**
> ☐ tell somebody about a problem (e.g., in a hotel)
> ☐ offer to do something
> ☐ greet a friend who you haven't seen for a long time

G simple past: regular and irregular verbs
V vacations
P regular verbs: *-ed* endings

Where did you go on vacation?

I went to Costa Rica with some friends.

2A Right place, wrong person

1 VOCABULARY vacations

a In one minute, write down five things you like doing when you're on vacation, e.g., *relaxing, going to museums*. Then compare with a partner.

b ➤ **p.152 Vocabulary Bank** *Vacations.*

c In pairs, interview your partner with the vacation questionnaire. Ask *Why?*

My perfect summer vacation

Which do you prefer...?

going abroad **or** going on vacation in your country
going by car, bus, plane, **or** train
going to the beach **or** going to a city
staying in a hotel (or apartment) **or** going camping
tanning, going sightseeing, **or** going for walks
hot, sunny weather **or** cool, cloudy weather
going with friends **or** going with your family

2 READING & SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. **A** read about **Joe's** vacation. **B** read about **Laura's** vacation. Find the answers to questions 1–5.

1 Where did he / she go on vacation?
2 Who did he / she go with?
3 Where did he / she stay?
4 What was the weather like?
5 Why didn't he / she enjoy the vacation?

b Now tell your partner about the vacation you read. Use questions 1–5 to help you.

c Read your partner's text. In pairs, guess the meaning of the highlighted words and phrases. Whose vacation do you think was worse? Why?

d Have you ever taken a vacation that you didn't enjoy very much? What happened?

The place is perfect, the weather is wonderful,

but if you're with the wrong person, a vacation can be a disaster...

Joe 28, a flight attendant

Last October, I went on vacation to Thailand for two weeks with my girlfriend, Mia.

The vacation began well. We spent two days in Bangkok and saw the Floating Market and the Royal Palace. But things went wrong when we left Bangkok. I wanted to stay in hostels, which were basic but clean, but Mia said they were too uncomfortable. So we stayed in very expensive hotels. I wanted to experience the local atmosphere, but Mia just wanted to go shopping. I thought I knew Mia well, but you don't know a person until you travel with him or her. It was awful! We argued about everything.

For our last four days we went to Ko Chang, a beautiful island. It was like being in paradise. The weather was beautiful and the beaches were wonderful, but we just sunbathed without speaking. We spent our last night back in Bangkok, and we met some travelers from Australia. They were really friendly, and Mia started flirting with one of the boys. That was the end.

> "you don't know a person until you travel with him or her"

When we arrived at O'Hare International Airport the next day, we decided to break up.

I took hundreds of photos, but when I got home I didn't show them to anyone.

Laura 26, a nurse

> "I'd love to go back to Costa Rica one day...but without Linda."

Last spring, my best friend Isabelle and I booked a vacation in Costa Rica. We rented a small house for a week with a fantastic view of the ocean. At the last minute another friend, Linda, asked if she could come, too. We felt sorry for her because she had problems with her boyfriend, so we said yes.

Costa Rica was magical and the weather was perfect, but the vacation was a disaster for one simple reason: Linda was so cheap! She has a good job so she's not poor, but she just didn't want to pay for anything. When we went sightseeing, she didn't want to go on any cruises or do any nature activities that cost money. When we went on a zipline tour, she complained that it was too expensive. When we went to have lunch or dinner, she always wanted to go to cheap restaurants or she bought a sandwich and ate it in the house. But the night I invited her and Isabelle out on my birthday, she chose the most expensive things on the menu! The worst thing was that although Isabelle and I paid for the house, Linda never once bought us a coffee or a snack.

I'd love to go back to Costa Rica one day...but without Linda.

3 LISTENING

a (1.34)) You are going to listen to Mia and Linda talking about their vacations. First listen to Mia. Does she agree with Joe about the vacation?

b Listen again. What does Mia say about...?

1 her relationship with Joe before they went
2 the places where they stayed
3 talking to other travelers
4 photos
5 going on vacation with a boyfriend

c (1.35)) Now listen to Linda. What's her opinion of the vacation? Then listen again. What does she say about...?

1 Costa Rica
2 what they did there
3 the cost of her vacation
4 her next vacation

d Who do you sympathize with most, Joe or Mia? Laura or Linda?

4 GRAMMAR simple past: regular and irregular verbs

a What is the simple past of these verbs? Are they regular or irregular? Check your answers in **Joe's** text.

go _____	begin _____
spend _____	leave _____
want _____	be _____/_____
stay _____	think _____
know _____	argue _____
sunbathe _____	take _____

b Now underline the simple past [+] verbs in **Laura's** text. What are the base forms?

c Find and underline two simple past [−] verbs in the two texts. How do you make [−] and [?] in the simple past...?

- with normal verbs
- with *was / were*
- with *could*

d ➤ **p.128 Grammar Bank 2A.** Learn more about the simple past and practice it.

5 PRONUNCIATION regular verbs: *-ed* endings

a (1.37)) Listen and repeat the sentences.

t tie	We booked a vacation. We walked around the town.
d dog	We sunbathed on the beach. We argued about everything.
/ɪd/	We rented a house. We decided to break up.

b Say the simple past of these verbs. In which ones is *-ed* pronounced /ɪd/?

arrive ask end invite like love need park start stay

c (1.38)) Listen and check.

Regular simple past verbs
Remember that we don't usually pronounce the *e* in *-ed*.
The *-ed* ending is usually pronounced /t/ or /d/. The difference between these endings is very small.
We only pronounce the *e* in *-ed* when there is a **t** or a **d** before it, e.g., *wanted, ended*. With these verbs *-ed* = /ɪd/.

6 SPEAKING

a Look at **Your last vacation** below. What are the questions?

b Think about your answers to the questions.

YOUR LAST VACATION
1 Where / go?
2 When / go?
3 Who / go with?
4 Where / stay?
5 What / the food like?
6 What / the weather like?
7 What / do during the day?
8 What / do at night?
9 / have a good time?
10 / have any problems?

c Work in pairs. Ask your partner about his / her vacation. Show interest in what he / she says and ask for more information. Then change roles.

Useful language for showing interest
[+] *Really? Wow! Fantastic! Great!* etc.
[−] *Oh, no! How awful!* etc.
[?] *Was it expensive? Why? What happened?* etc.

G past continuous
V prepositions of time and place: *at, in, on*
P sentence stress

What was happening?

People were waiting for the results.

2B The story behind the photo

1 READING

a Look at a photo that news photographer Tom Pilston took in 2008. What do you think is happening?

b Read Tom's description of what happened on the night he took the photo. Were you right?

c Read it again and answer the questions.

1 Why did Tom Pilston go to Chicago?
2 Why couldn't he take a photograph of Obama?
3 What was the weather like?
4 Where did he take this photo?
5 Where could the people see the election results?
6 Was he sorry that he couldn't go inside the center?
7 What happened when Obama won?

d Why do you think the photographer thought his photo was better than a photo of Obama himself? Do you agree?

A moment in history

On November 4th, I arrived in Chicago late in the evening. I wanted to photograph Barack Obama and his family in the convention center, but when I got there I discovered that I didn't have my press pass and I couldn't go inside. I walked around the park outside the center. Although it was November, it was a warm night. The atmosphere was wonderful. When I took this photo, everybody was looking at the TV screens waiting for the election results. Some people were quietly holding hands and smiling – others were tense and nervous. They felt that it was their moment. Suddenly, I realized that this was a better place to be than inside. I was watching Obama's victory through the faces of all these people, African, Hispanic, Chinese, white. At about 11 o'clock the results were announced, and everybody went crazy. People started laughing, shouting, and crying. But when Obama made his speech they all became quiet and emotional. There was only one place to be on the planet that night – and I was there.

2 GRAMMAR past continuous

a Look at the highlighted verbs in an extract from the text. Do they describe actions that happened...?

a after he took the photo
b at the same time as he took the photo

> When I took this photo, everybody was looking at the TV screens waiting for the election results. Some people were quietly holding hands and smiling – others were tense and nervous.

b ➤ **p.128 Grammar Bank 2B.** Learn more about the past continuous and practice it.

c 1 41))) In pairs, listen to the sounds and make a sentence using the past continuous and the simple past.

They were playing tennis when it started to rain.

3 VOCABULARY *at, in, on*

a Which preposition do you use before...?

1 a date (e.g., November 4th) ____
2 a time (e.g., 11 o'clock) ____
3 the morning, the afternoon, etc. ____
4 a room or building (e.g., the convention center) ____

b Check your answers to **a** in the text. What preposition do you use with...?

1 a month (e.g., January) ____
2 the weekend ____
3 home, work, school ____

c ➤ **p.153 Vocabulary Bank** *Prepositions.* Do part 1.

d ➤ **Communication** *at, in, on* **A** *p.100* **B** *p.106.* Answer the questions with a preposition and a time or place.

4 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a (1) 43 Listen and repeat the dialogue. Copy the rhythm.

A **Where** were you at **six o'clock** in the **evening**?
B I was at **work**.
A **What** were you **doing**?
B I was **having** a **meeting** with the **boss**.

b In pairs, take turns answering the questions about yesterday.

6:30 a.m.	11:00 a.m.	lunchtime	4:00 p.m.
6:00 p.m.	10:00 p.m.	midnight	

Where were you at 6:30 in the morning? — *I was at home.*

What were you doing?

5 LISTENING

a Look at a famous photo that was on the cover of many magazines around the world in the 1960s. Where do you think the people are? What do you think is happening?

b Read the beginning of a newspaper article. Why do you think it is called "*The image that cost a fortune*"?

c (1) 44 Now listen to the woman in the photo talking about it. Were you right?

d Listen again. Choose a, b, or c.

1 In 1968, she ____.
   a wasn't interested in politics
   b was a communist
   c was an anarchist
2 She loved the atmosphere because all the students were fighting for ____.
   a peace b democracy c freedom
3 She was sitting on a friend's shoulders ____.
   a because she was tired
   b to take photos
   c so that she could see better
4 She was carrying the flag because ____.
   a she was a leader in the demonstration
   b somebody gave it to her
   c she brought it with her
5 Her grandfather died six ____ later.
   a days b weeks c months

e Do you think she is sorry that she was in that photo?

6 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Talk to a partner. Give more information if you can.

1 Do you have a photo you really like? Who took it? What was happening at the time?
2 Do you upload photos to Facebook or other Internet sites? What was the last photo you uploaded?
3 Do you have a photo as the screen saver on your computer or phone? What is it of?
4 Do you have a favorite photo of yourself as a child? Who took it? What was happening when they took it? What were you wearing?
5 Do you have any photos in your bedroom or living room? What are they of?
6 Do you know any other famous historical photos? Who or what are they of?

b ➤ p.112 **Writing** *My favorite photo.* Write a description of your favorite photo.

The image that cost a fortune

Caroline de Bendern was born in 1940. She was the granddaughter of Count Maurice de Bendern, a rich aristocrat who owned a lot of property in Paris and Monaco. Although he had other grandchildren, the Count decided to leave all his money to Caroline. "I never knew why," says Caroline. "Perhaps because I was pretty." He paid for her to go to very expensive schools in England, and he hoped that she would marry well, perhaps a member of a European royal family. But Caroline was a rebel. She went to New York and worked there for a short time as a model. Then, in 1968 when she was 28 years old, she returned to Paris...

Adapted from a newspaper

G time sequencers and connectors
V verb phrases
P word stress

2C One dark October evening

Why was she going very fast?

Because she was in a hurry.

1 GRAMMAR
time sequencers and connectors

a (1) 45 Read the story once. Then complete it with a word or phrase from the box. Listen to the story and check.

After that The next day One evening in October
Suddenly ~~Two minutes later~~ When

b With a partner, answer the questions.

1 Why did Hannah go and speak to Jamie?
2 Why did Jamie play *Blue As Your Eyes*?
3 What happened when Hannah left the club?
4 What was the restaurant like?
5 Where did they go every evening after that?
6 What was the weather like that evening?
7 Why was Hannah driving fast?
8 Why didn't she see the man?

c From memory, complete these sentences from the story with *so*, *because*, or *although*. Then check with the story.

1 She was going very fast _____ she was in a hurry.
2 _____ the food wasn't very good, they had a wonderful time.
3 He was wearing a dark coat, _____ Hannah didn't see him at first.

d ➤ p.128 Grammar Bank 2C. Learn more about time sequencers and connectors and practice them.

e Complete the sentences in your own words. Then compare with a partner.

1 They fell in love on their first date. Two months later...
2 I went to bed early last night because...
3 The weather was beautiful, so we decided...
4 It was really cold that night, and when I woke up next morning...
5 Although we didn't play well in the final game...
6 I was driving along the freeway listening to the radio. Suddenly...

Hannah met Jamie in the summer of 2010. It was Hannah's 21st birthday, and she and her friends went to a club. They wanted to dance, but they didn't like the music, so Hannah went to speak to the DJ. "This music is awful," she said. "Could you play something else?" The DJ looked at her and said, "Don't worry, I have the perfect song for you."

[1] *Two minutes later* he said, "The next song is by Scouting For Girls. It's called *Blue As Your Eyes*, and it's for a beautiful girl who's dancing over there." Hannah knew that the song was for her. [2]_____ Hannah and her friends left the club, the DJ was waiting for her at the door. "Hi, I'm Jamie," he said to Hannah. "Can I see you again?" So Hannah gave him her phone number.

[3]_____ Jamie called Hannah and invited her to dinner. He took her to a very romantic restaurant, and they talked all evening. Although the food wasn't very good, they had a wonderful time. [4]_____ Jamie and Hannah saw each other every day. Every evening when Hannah finished work, they met at 5:30 in a coffee shop on Bridge Street. They were madly in love.

[5]_____, Hannah was at work. As usual she was going to meet Jamie at 5:30. It was dark and it was raining. She looked at her watch. It was 5:20! She was going to be late! She ran to her car and got in. At 5:25 she was driving along Bridge Street.

She was going very fast because she was in a hurry. [6]_____, a man ran across the street. He was wearing a dark coat, so Hannah didn't see him at first. Quickly, she put her foot on the brake...

2 PRONUNCIATION word stress

Stress in two-syllable words
Approximately 80% of two-syllable words are stressed on the first syllable.
Most two-syllable nouns and adjectives are stressed on the first syllable, e.g., *mother*, *happy*. However, many two-syllable verbs and prepositions or connectors are stressed on the second syllable, e.g., *arrive*, *behind*, *before*.

a Underline the stressed syllable in these words from the story.

a|cross af|ter a|gain a|long
al|though aw|ful be|cause birth|day
eve|ning in|vite per|fect se|cond

b 1 49 Listen and check.

3 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Make verb phrases with a verb from box 1 and a phrase from box 2. All the phrases are from the story.

invite somebody to dinner

1
invite
have
drive
meet
give
take
wait
be
play
leave
run

2
along Bridge Street
somebody your email / phone number
a song
across the street
in a hurry
in a coffee shop
for somebody
the club very late
~~somebody to dinner~~
somebody to a restaurant
a wonderful time

b Cover box 1. Try to remember the verb for each phrase.

4 SPEAKING & LISTENING

a Read the story of Hannah and Jamie in **1** again.

b In pairs, use pictures 1–5 to retell the story. Try to use connectors and the verb phrases in **3**.

c There are two different endings to the story. Take a class vote. Do you want to listen to the **happy ending** or the **sad ending**?

d 1 50, 51 What do you think is going to happen in the ending you have chosen? Listen once and check.

e Listen again. If you chose the happy ending, answer the questions in ➤ **Communication** *Happy ending p.101*. If you chose the sad ending, answer the questions in ➤ **Communication** *Sad ending p.109*.

5 1 52 SONG *Blue As Your Eyes* ♫

1&2 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 _____ any brothers or sisters?
a Have you b Do you c Do you have

2 _____ last night?
a Where you went
b Where did you go
c Where you did go

3 My brother _____ soccer.
a doesn't like b don't like c doesn't likes

4 Her parents _____ a small business.
a has b haves c have

5 I _____ to music when I'm working.
a never listen b don't never listen c listen never

6 In the picture the woman _____ a blue dress.
a wears b wearing c is wearing

7 **A** What _____? **B** I'm looking for my keys.
a you are doing b do you do c are you doing

8 She's in college. She _____ history.
a 's studing b 's studying c studying

9 We _____ to Bangkok last August.
a were b went c did go

10 I saw the movie, but I _____ it.
a didn't liked b don't liked c didn't like

11 When I got home, my parents _____ on the sofa.
a were sitting b was sitting c were siting

12 What _____ at 11 p.m.? You didn't answer my call.
a you were doing b you was doing c were you doing

13 She couldn't see him because she _____ her glasses.
a wasn't wearing b didn't wear c didn't wearing

14 We went to the movies. _____ we decided to go for a walk.
a After b Then c When

15 We had a great time, _____ the weather wasn't very good.
a so b because c although

VOCABULARY

a Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

book do drive invite leave
look play stay take wear

1 **A** What do you do? **B** I'm a doctor.
2 **A** What does she look like? **B** She's tall and slim.
3 She doesn't usually wear jewelry – only her wedding ring.
4 **A** Did you take any photos? **B** No, I didn't.
5 **A** Where did you stay? **B** In a small hotel.
6 Did you book your flights online?
7 **A** Let's invite your parents to dinner. **B** Good idea.
8 **A** Are you going to leave there?
B No, we're going to take the train.
9 **A** Go on! Ask the DJ to play our song! **B** OK.
10 **A** What time do we need to drive home tomorrow?
B About 7:00. Our flight is at 9:00.

b Complete with *at*, *in*, or *on*.

1 The meeting is on March 13th.
2 **A** Where's Mom? **B** She's in the kitchen.
3 He was born in 1989.
4 **A** Where's the dictionary?
B It's on the shelf in my room.
5 Mark's not back yet – he's still in school.
6 It's a very quiet town, especially at night.
7 We went to vacation to Bangkok last year.

c Circle the word that is different.

1	straight	long	blond	beard
2	smart	lazy	generous	funny
3	friendly	cheap	stupid	unkind
4	dress	skirt	tights	tie
5	socks	gloves	sneakers	sandals
6	necklace	bracelet	ring	scarf
7	windy	foggy	dirty	sunny
8	basic	dirty	uncomfortable	luxurious

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1	/i/	E	G	J	V
2	/ɜr/	shirt	shorts	work	curly
3	/ɪz/	chooses	languages	lives	glasses
4	/aɪ/	weight	height	kind	night
5	/ə/	arrive	along	actor	about

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 tal|ka|tive
2 mus|tache
3 pre|fer
4 dis|gus|ting
5 comfor|ta|ble

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the newspaper article once. Does the journalist think that taking photos in museums is a good thing or a bad thing?

b Read the article again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 The journalist saw tourists taking photographs of works of art in Rome and New York.
2 When he first saw people taking photos in the MOMA, he didn't understand what they were really doing.
3 Then he realized that the photographers were not looking at the paintings.
4 They were taking photos because they wanted to look at the paintings later.
5 Later a couple asked him to take a photo of them in front of a painting.
6 He suggests two possible ways of solving the problem.

c Look at the highlighted words in the text. Guess their meaning from the context. Check with your teacher or with a dictionary.

We were there!

The first time I noticed this phenomenon was a few years ago, in St. Peter's Basilica in Rome – a crowd of people standing around Michelangelo's *Pietà*, taking photos with their cameras and cell phones. Then last week I saw it again at the Museum of Modern Art (the MOMA) in New York City. At first, I wasn't too worried when I saw people photographing the paintings. It was a little irritating, but that was all. It didn't make me angry. Then the sad truth hit me. Most of the people were taking photos without looking at the paintings themselves. People were pushing me, not because they were trying to get a better view of the art, but because they wanted to make sure that no one blocked their photo. Was it possible that maybe they were taking the photos so that they could admire the paintings better when they got home? This was very improbable. They were not there to see the paintings, but to take photos to prove that they had been there.

Then it got worse. Now people were taking photos of their partners or friends who were posing next to, or in front of some of the most famous paintings. Neither the photographers nor the person they were photographing had looked at the art itself, although I saw that sometimes they read the label, to make sure that the artist really was famous. At least nobody asked me to take a picture of them together, smiling in front of a Picasso!

I think that photography in museums should be banned, but I also have a less drastic solution. I think that people who want to take a photo of an exhibit should be forced to look at it first, for at least one minute.

Adapted from Marcel Berlin's article in The Guardian

VIDEO CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

1.53 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Justin Joanna Jeanna David Yoni

1 Justin _____.
a looks like his mother
b looks like his father
c doesn't look like his father or his mother

2 Joanna's favorite painting is of _____.
a a landscape b a person c an animal

3 Jeanna's last vacation was _____.
a short and stressful
b long and fun
c short but good

4 David _____.
a takes a lot of photos
b is in a lot of photos
c has a lot of photos on his phone

5 Yoni says _____.
a he enjoys crying at the end of a movie
b he thinks movies with a sad ending are more realistic
c he never watches movies with a sad ending

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ ask and answer six questions about work / studies, family, and free-time activities
2 ☐ describe the appearance and personality of a person you know well
3 ☐ describe a picture in this book and say what is happening, what the people are wearing, etc.
4 ☐ ask and answer three questions about a recent vacation
5 ☐ describe a favorite photo and say what was happening when you took it
6 ☐ say three true sentences using the connectors *so*, *because*, and *although*

VIDEO **Short movies** A photographer
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G *be going to* (plans and predictions)
V airports
P sentence stress and fast speech

What are you going to do there?

I'm going to teach English.

3A Plans and dreams

1 VOCABULARY airports

a When was the last time you were at an airport? Was it to travel somewhere (where?) or to meet someone (who?)?

b Look at the airport signs and match them to the words and phrases below.

- Arrivals
- Baggage check-in
- Baggage claim
- Check-in
- Customs
- Departures
- Gates
- Elevators
- Passport control
- Terminal
- Restrooms
- Cart

c 1 54 Listen and check. Then cover the words and look at the symbols. Remember the words and phrases.

2 LISTENING

a Look at the three travelers in the picture. Who do you think is...?

- going to work abroad for an NGO (= non-governmental organization)
- going to see an ex-partner
- going to do a photo shoot in an exotic place

We spent a morning in the departures area last week asking people about their travel plans.

b 1 55 Listen and check your answers to **a**. Then listen again and complete the chart.

	Where to?	Why?	Other information
Olivia			
Matthew			
Lily			

3 GRAMMAR

be going to (plans and predictions)

a (1 56)) Look at these sentences from the airport interviews and fill in the blanks with a form of *be going to* + verb. Then listen and check.

1 _____ English to young children.
2 How long _____ there for?
3 It's winter in Australia now, so _____ pretty cold.
4 _____ you at the airport?
5 I'm sure _____ a great time.

b In pairs decide if sentences 1–5 are plans or predictions about the future. Write **PL** (plan) or **PR** (prediction).

c ➤ **p.130 Grammar Bank 3A.** Learn more about *be going to* and practice it.

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

sentence stress and fast speech

a (1 58)) Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

1 **What** are you **going** to **do tonight**?
2 **Are** you **going** to **see** a **movie**?
3 I'm **going** to **cook** a **meal** for you.
4 I **think** it's **going** to **rain**.
5 We **aren't going** to **have** a **vacation** this year.

Fast speech: *gonna*
When people speak fast they often pronounce *going to* as *gonna* /ˈɡənə/, e.g., *What are you going to do?* sounds like *What are you gonna do?*

b (1 59)) Listen and write six sentences.

c ➤ **Communication** *What are your plans?* **A** *p.101* **B** *p.107.* Interview each other about your plans.

5 READING

a What is your nearest airport? What's it like? What can you do there while you're waiting for a flight?

b Read an article about the top airports in the world. Which is the best airport(s) if you...?

1 have a medical problem
2 would like to see a movie
3 want to play a sport or exercise
4 need to leave your dog for the weekend
5 are worried about getting lost
6 want to wash your clothes
7 would like to see the city between flights

Singapore Changi Airport orchid garden

Top airports in the world

For many people airports are a nightmare – long lines when you check in and go through security and an even longer wait if your flight is delayed. But there are some airports where you can actually enjoy yourself. All good airports have excellent facilities for business people and children, free Wi-Fi, restaurants, cafes, and stores. But the best airports have much more...

SINGAPORE CHANGI AIRPORT is paradise for flower lovers because it has an indoor orchid garden! It also has a rooftop swimming pool and a free sight-seeing tour for people who have at least five hours to wait for their connecting flight.

If you like computer games, you'll never be bored at **HONG KONG INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT** – there are dozens of free Playstations all over the terminals! It's also good for people with no sense of direction – there are "Airport Ambassadors" in red coats, who help you to get from one place to another.

INCHEON INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT is the place to relax. You can go to the hair salon and have beauty treatments or a massage. Sports fans can also play golf at the airport's 72-hole golf course!

MUNICH AIRPORT helps to keep passengers entertained with a 60-seat movie theater and non-stop movies. There is also free coffee and tea near all the seating areas, and lots of free magazines and newspapers.

If you worry about your health and like to be near medical services at all times, **OSAKA INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT** in Japan is the perfect place to wait because it has dentist and doctor offices. And for people with animals, there is even a pet hotel!

If you don't have time to do your laundry because of your busy schedule, drop it off at the **VANCOUVER INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT** cleaners before you have to board your flight. Then pick up your clean clothes when you get back from your trip.

c Look at the highlighted words and phrases related to airports and guess their meaning.

d Role-play with a partner.

A imagine you are at one of these airports and your flight is delayed for three hours. **B** calls you on your cell phone. Tell **B** where you are and what you are going to do. Then change roles. Do the same with other airports.

6 (1 60)) SONG *This is the Life* ♫

G present continuous (future arrangements)
V verbs + prepositions, e.g., *arrive in*
P sounding friendly

When are you leaving?

On Monday, and I'm coming back on Friday.

3B Let's meet again

1 READING & LISTENING

a 1 61))) How do you say these dates? Listen and check.

May 3	August 12, 2012	December 31
6/22	2/5	July 20, 1998

b Ben and Lily are old friends from college. Read their Facebook messages and number them in order.

Search Home Profile

Lily Varnell
☐ Great. I'm going to book my tickets tomorrow, and then I can let you know my flight times.

Ben West
☐ OK. Why don't you call me closer to the date, at the end of April? Then we can set a day and a time to meet. I know a great restaurant...

Lily Varnell
[1] Hi, Ben! No news from you for ages. How are things? Are you still working at the University of San Francisco? I have a conference there next month, and I thought perhaps we could meet. I'd love to see you again! Lily.

Ben West
☐ It depends on the day. I'm going to Los Angeles one day that week, but it's not very far – I'm coming back the same day. I'm sure we can find a time that's good for both of us.

Lily Varnell
☐ It's from May 3rd to the 7th, but I don't know my travel arrangements yet. What are you doing that week? Are you free any time?

Ben West
☐ Lily! Great to hear from you. Yes, I'm still at the university here and it's going really well – San Francisco is a great city to live in. When exactly is the conference?

Lily Varnell
☐ Wonderful! I can't wait!

c Read the messages again in the right order. Why does Lily get in touch with Ben? What are they planning to do?

d Match the highlighted words and phrases to their meaning.

1 _____ for a long time
2 _____ definite plans for the future
3 _____ I continue to be
4 _____ maybe
5 _____ the two
6 _____ to decide something (e.g., a day / date)

e 1 62))) Lily calls Ben and leaves him a message. Listen and complete her flight information.

Thank you for booking with JetBlue

YOUR RESERVATION NUMBER IS: **I5CS2L**

Going out: Flight JBY4587 **Date:** _____
Depart Boston at 12:10 p.m.
Arrive San Francisco at _____.

Going back: Flight JBY4588 **Date:** _____
Depart San Francisco at _____.
Arrive Boston at 9:10 p.m.

Hotel reservations:
Six nights at Hotel _____.

2 GRAMMAR present continuous (future arrangements)

a In pairs, underline five present continuous verbs in the Facebook messages. Which two are about now? What time period do the other three refer to?

b 1.63 Look at three extracts from the message Lily leaves Ben. Can you remember the missing verbs? Listen and check.

1 I'm _____ from Boston on JetBlue.
2 I'm _____ in San Francisco at 2:40 p.m.
3 I'm _____ at a hotel near the convention center.

c ➤ p.130 Grammar Bank 3B. Learn more about the present continuous for future arrangements and practice it.

d 1.65 Lily calls Ben when she arrives at the hotel. Listen to the conversation. What day do they arrange to meet?

e Listen again. Complete Ben's calendar for the week.

Sunday 2
seeing Paul
Monday 3
Tuesday 4
Wednesday 5
Thursday 6
Friday 7

f Cover the calendar. Work with a partner and test your memory.

What's Ben doing on Sunday? / *He's seeing Paul. What's he doing on Monday?*

g 1.66 Listen. What happens when Ben and Lily meet?

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING sounding friendly

a 1.67 Listen to another dialogue. Then listen again and repeat it sentence by sentence. Try to copy the speakers' intonation.

A Would you like to go out for dinner?
B I'd love to.
A Are you free on Thursday?
B Sorry, I'm going to the movies.
A What about Friday? What are you doing then?
B Nothing. Friday's fine.
A OK. Let's go to the new Italian place.
B Great.

b Practice the dialogue with a partner. Try to sound friendly.

c Complete your calendar with different activities for three evenings.

Monday	Wednesday	Friday	Sunday
Tuesday	**Thursday**	**Saturday**	

d Talk to other students. Try to find days when you are both free and suggest doing something. Write it on your calendar. Try to make an arrangement with a different person for every night.

Are you free on Friday evening? / *Yes, I am.*

Would you like to go to the movies? / *Yes, I'd love to.*

4 VOCABULARY verbs + prepositions

a Look at things Lily and Ben say. What are the missing prepositions?

1 It depends ____ the day.
2 I'm arriving ____ San Francisco at 2:40 p.m.
3 Paul invited me ____ dinner ages ago.

b ➤ p.153 Vocabulary Bank *Prepositions*. Do part 2 (Verbs + prepositions).

c Complete the questions with a preposition. Then ask and answer with a partner.

1 What do you usually ask ____ if you go to a cafe with friends?
2 Who do you think should pay ____ the meal on a first date?
3 Who do you usually speak ____ when you're worried ____ something?
4 Do you spend more money ____ clothes or ____ gadgets?
5 Do you think it's possible to fall ____ love ____ somebody without meeting them face-to-face?

5 WRITING

➤ p.113 Writing *An informal email.* Write an email about travel arrangements.

G defining relative clauses
V expressions for paraphrasing: *like, for example*, etc.
P pronunciation in a dictionary

What's a gym?

It's a place where you can improve your physical fitness.

3C What's the word?

1 LISTENING

a Do you like playing word games like *Scrabble* or doing crosswords? Look at the *Scrabble* letters on the page. How many words of four or more letters can you make in three minutes?

b 2 2 Listen to the introduction to a TV game show, *What's the Word?* How do you play the game?

c 2 3 Now listen to the show. Write down the six words.

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____

d 2 4 Listen and check your answers.

2 GRAMMAR
defining relative clauses

a Look at three sentences from *What's the Word?* and complete them with *who, that*, or *where*.

1 It's something _____ people use to speak to another person.
2 It's a place _____ people go when they want to go shopping.
3 It's somebody _____ works in a hospital.

b Read sentences 1–3 again. When do we use *who, that*, and *where*?

c ➤ p.130 Grammar Bank 3C. Learn more about defining relative clauses and practice them.

3 VOCABULARY paraphrasing

a What do you usually do if you're talking to someone in English and you don't know a word that you need?

a Look up the translation on your phone.
b Try to mime the word.
c Try to explain what you mean using other words you know.

b 2 6 Complete the useful expressions with these words. Then listen and check.

example kind like opposite similar
somebody something somewhere

Useful expressions for explaining a word that you don't know:

1 It's _____ / a person who works in a hospital.
2 It's _____ / a thing that we use for everything nowadays.
3 It's _____ / a place where people go when they want to buy something.
4 It's a _____ of gadget.
5 It's the _____ of dark.
6 It's _____ light, but you use it to describe hair.
7 It's _____ to intelligent.
8 For _____, you do this to the TV.

c Complete the definitions for these words.

1 **a DJ** It's somebody...
2 **an art gallery** It's somewhere...
3 **a camera** It's something...
4 **an elevator** It's a kind of...
5 **sunbathe** For example, you do this...
6 **curly** It's the opposite...

4 SPEAKING

➤ **Communication** *What's the word?* **A** *p.101* **B** *p.107*. Play a game and define words for your partner to guess.

5 READING

a Read the article. How many ways does it mention to create new words? What are they?

b Look at the highlighted new words. What do you think they mean? Match them to the definitions below.

1 _____ *n* a young man who is going out with a much older woman
2 _____ *v* to send a message using a cell phone
3 _____ *n* a person who works in a coffee shop
4 _____ *n* feeling angry because of the traffic or another person's driving
5 _____ *n* coffee with hot milk
6 _____ *n* a place where you can also have very good food

c Can you explain the meaning of these other words from the text?

emoticon to tweet iPod to google
Wi-Fi ringtone smartphone

6 PRONUNCIATION

pronunciation in a dictionary

a Look at two dictionary extracts. What do the abbreviations mean?

search /sərtʃ/ *v* look carefully because you are trying to find sb or sth

busy /ˈbɪzi/ *adj* ocupado

1 *v* _____ 3 *sb* _____
2 *adj* _____ 4 *sth* _____

b Look at the phonetic transcriptions in **a**. How do you pronounce the words?

Checking pronunciation in a dictionary
This symbol (ˈ) shows stress. The stressed syllable is the one after the symbol.
The **Sound Bank** on *p.166* can help you to check the pronunciation of new words.

c 2.7 Look carefully at the pronunciation of the words below. Practice saying them correctly. Listen and check. Do you know what they mean?

1 YouTube /ˈyutub/
2 keyboard /ˈkibɔrd/
3 zoom /zum/
4 gadget /ˈgædʒət/
5 message /ˈmɛsɪdʒ/
6 hacker /ˈhækər/

900 new words in 3 months

Everyone knows the English language is changing. Every three months, the OED (Oxford English Dictionary) publishes updates to its online dictionary. One recent update contained 900 new words, new expressions, or new meanings for existing words. But where do they all come from?

New words are created in many different ways. We can make a new word by combining two words, like **gastropub** (gastronomy + pub) or **emoticon** (emotion + icon). Sometimes we put two words together in a new way, for example, **road rage** or **boy toy**.

We also find that nouns can change into verbs. Take the word **text**. Text was always a noun (from about 1369, according to the OED), but it is now very common as a verb, **to text** somebody. Other new words already existed, but with a different meaning. For example, **tweet** was the noise that a bird makes, but now we use it more often (as a verb or a noun) for a message that people put on the social networking site Twitter.

Another way in which we make new words is by "adopting" words from foreign languages, like **barista** or **latte** (imported from Italian when coffee shops became really popular in the US in the 1990s).

A lot of new words come from the names of brands or companies, for example, we play music on an **iPod** and we **google** information. We also need more general words to describe new technology or new gadgets: **Wi-Fi**, **ringtone**, and **smartphone** are some recent examples.

The invention of new words is not a new phenomenon. The word **brunch** (breakfast + lunch) first appeared in 1896, **newspaper** (news + paper) in 1667, and English speakers started to use the word *cafe* (from French) in the late 19th century. The difference now is how quickly new words and expressions enter the language and how quickly we start to use and understand them.

Practical English Restaurant problems

EPISODE 2

1 VIDEO IN THE NEW YORK OFFICE

a 2 8 Watch or listen. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 The New York office is smaller than the London office.
2 Barbara is the designer of the magazine.
3 Rob has never been to New York before.
4 Barbara is going to have lunch with Rob and Jenny.
5 Holly is going to work with Rob.
6 Holly wants to go to the restaurant because she's hungry.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

2 VOCABULARY restaurants

Take the restaurant quiz with a partner.

RESTAURANT QUIZ

What do you call...?

1 the book or list that tells you what food there is
2 the three parts of a meal
3 the person who serves you
4 the piece of paper with the price of the meal
5 extra money you leave if you are happy with your meal or with the service

What do you say...?

1 if you want a table for four people
2 when the waiter asks you what you want
3 when you are ready to pay

3 VIDEO AT THE RESTAURANT

a 2 9 Cover the dialogue and watch or listen. Answer the questions.

1 What do they order?
2 What problems do they have?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Are you ready to _____?	Yes, please.
Can I get you something to _____ with?	No, thank you. I'd like the tuna with a green salad.
And for you, sir?	I'll have the steak, please.
Would you like that with fries or a baked _____?	Fries, please.
How would you like your steak? Rare, _____, or well done?	Well done. Nothing for me.
OK. And to _____?	Water, please.
_____ or sparkling?	Sparkling.
The tuna for you ma'am, and the steak for you, _____.	I'm sorry, but I asked for a green salad, not fries.
No problem. I'll _____ it.	Excuse me.
Yes, sir?	Sorry, I asked for my steak well done and this is rare.
I'm really sorry. I'll _____ it back to the kitchen.	

American and British English
(French) fries = American English
chips = British English

c 2 10 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practice the dialogue with a partner.

e In pairs, role-play the dialogue.

A You are in the restaurant. Order a steak or tuna.

B You are the waiter/waitress. Offer **A** fries, a baked potato, or salad with the steak or tuna. You begin with *Are you ready to order?*

A There is a problem with your order. Explain it to the waiter/waitress.

B Apologize, and try to solve the problem.

f Change roles.

4 VIDEO HOLLY AND ROB MAKE FRIENDS

a 2 11 Watch or listen to Rob, Holly, and Jenny. Do they enjoy the lunch?

b Watch or listen again and answer the questions.

1 What's Rob going to write about?
2 How does Holly offer to help him with interviews?
3 What does she say they could do one evening?
4 What's the problem with the check?
5 Why does Jenny say it's time to go?
6 Do you think Jenny wanted Holly to come to lunch?

American and British English
check = American English
bill = British English

c Look at the **Social English phrases**. Can you remember any of the missing words?

Social English phrases
Holly _____ tell me, Rob...
Rob Well, to _____ with...
Rob Do you have any _____?
Rob That would _____ great.
Jenny _____ we have the check (bill), please?
Jenny Excuse me, I think there's a _____.
Jenny OK, _____ to go.

d 2 12 Watch or listen and complete the phrases.

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

Can you...?
- ☐ order food in a restaurant
- ☐ explain when there is a problem with your food, the check, etc.
- ☐ ask what somebody is going to do today

G present perfect + *yet* and *already*
V housework, *make* or *do*?
P /y/ and /dʒ/

Have you cleaned up your room yet?

Yes, I did it this morning.

4A Parents and teenagers

1 READING

a Look at the definition of *teenager*. How do you pronounce it? Do you have a similar word in your language to describe a person of that age?

> **teenager** /ˈtiːneɪdʒər/ a person who is between 13 and 19 years old

b Read the article about some annoying habits. Write **P** if you think the sentence is a parent talking about teenagers, or **T** if you think it is a teenager talking about his / her parents.

Teenagers have annoying habits – but so do their parents!

Follow

#itreallyannoysme

1 **Josh Lopez** @joshlopez 15m
They come into my room without knocking and then are surprised to see things they don't really want to know about.

2 **Rachel Black** @blackr 16m
They just keep on texting when I'm telling them something really important and they say, "Yeah, yeah I heard you." Of course they didn't.

3 **Anthony Smith** @tonysmith 20m
They always pick up the remote and change the channel when I'm watching something really interesting.

4 **Isla May** @ibmay 1h
They leave their room in a terrible mess and then roll their eyes when I ask them to clean it.

5 **Mike Donovan** @donovan512 1h
They never pick up dirty clothes or wet towels from the floor. They think some elves come later and pick them up!

6 **Sarah Vine** @sarahvine 2h
They say no before I've even finished explaining what I want to do.

7 **Dave Win** @windave 4h
They tell me to do the dishes and then complain that I put things in the wrong place in the dishwasher.

8 **Sam James** @sujames 6h
Whenever I need to call them, their cell phone is either turned off or the battery is dead.

c Compare with a partner. Do you agree?

d Look at the highlighted verbs and verb phrases. With a partner, say what you think they mean.

e Do any of the parents' or teenagers' habits annoy *you*? Which ones?

2 VOCABULARY

housework, *make* or *do*?

a Look again at the highlighted phrases from the text. Which three are connected with housework?

b ➤ **p.154 Vocabulary Bank** *Housework, make or do?*

3 GRAMMAR

present perfect + *yet* and *already*

a 2 15 Look at the pictures. What do you think the people are arguing about? Listen and check.

1

2

3

b Listen again and complete the dialogues with a past participle from the list.

asked done dried
finished looked seen

1 A Have you *seen* my yellow sweater? I can't find it.
B No, I haven't. Have you _____ in your closet?
A Of course I have. What's that under your bed?
B Oh, yes. I remember now. I borrowed it.

2 A Why aren't you doing your homework?
B I've already _____ it.
A Really? When?
B I did it on the bus this afternoon.

3 A Have you _____ yet?
B Almost.
A I need the bathroom now.
B But I haven't _____ my hair yet.
A Well, hurry up then.

4 A I've already _____ you to get a plate for that sandwich. I just cleaned the floor, you know.
B OK. Oops – too late. Sorry!

c Look at the first two questions in dialogue 1. Are they about...?

a a specific time in the past
b a non-specific time (i.e., sometime between the past and now)

d Underline the sentences with *yet* and *already* in dialogues 2–4. What do you think they mean?

e ➤ **p.132 Grammar Bank 4A.** Learn more about the present perfect and practice it.

f 2 18 Listen and make the ⊞ sentences negative and the ⊟ sentences affirmative.

I've finished. *I haven't finished.*

It hasn't rained. *It's rained.*

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /y/ and /dʒ/

a 2 19 Listen and repeat the picture words and sounds.

y	dʒ
yacht	jazz

b 2 20 Put the words in the right column. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat the words.

just yet college yellow change teenager
use uniform year yoga enjoy
beautiful jacket young bridge argue

c Practice saying these sentences.

Jim has joined a judo class.
Have you worn your new uniform yet?

d ➤ **Communication** *Has he done it yet? p.101.*

e 2 21 Listen. Say what's happened.

5 LISTENING

a 2 22 Listen to the first part of a radio program about teenage caregivers. Answer the questions.

1 What reputation do teenagers have?
2 How many teenagers have to look after a family member?
3 What kinds of responsibilities do these young helpers have?

b 2 23 Now listen to the rest of the program. In what way are the two teenagers unusual? Do they feel positive or negative about their lives?

c Listen again and answer with **A** (Alice), **D** (Daniel), or **B** (both of them).

Who...?

1 takes care of his/her mother
2 takes care of his/her brother and sister
3 does a lot of housework
4 can't cook
5 doesn't live with his/her father
6 gives his/her mother a massage
7 is sometimes angry with his/her friends
8 never goes out without his/her phone

d Do you know any teenagers like Alice and Daniel? What do they do?

G present perfect or simple past? (1)
V shopping
P *c* and *ch*

Have you ever been to that store?

Yes. I bought this shirt there.

4B Fashion and shopping

1 READING

a With a partner, write down the names of three fashion designers. What nationality are they? Do they design more for men or for women? What kinds of things does their company make?

b Read the introduction to an interview and look at the photos. Do you like the clothes?

c Read the interview. Fill in the blanks with A–F.

A I absolutely hated dressing as a man.
B I really understand how women want to feel.
C My boyfriend at that time was very lucky.
D My feet were killing me!
E The only things I enjoyed there were art and sewing.
F They are so chic, and their sense of color is so natural to them.

d Look at the highlighted words and phrases related to fashion and shopping, and guess their meaning.

THE STYLE INTERVIEW

LINDKA CIERACH is a fashion designer. She makes very exclusive clothes for women. She has made clothes for many celebrities including members of the British royal family, for example Kate Middleton and Sarah Ferguson, whose wedding dress she designed, and actresses like Helen Mirren.

DID YOU ALWAYS WANT TO BE A DESIGNER?
Not at all! When I was at school I had problems reading, and later I was diagnosed as dyslexic. [1]____ After school I took a secretarial course and then I got a job at *Vogue* magazine. I loved it, and there I realized that what I wanted to do was design clothes.

WHY DO YOU THINK PEOPLE LIKE YOUR CLOTHES?
Being a female designer has many advantages. [2]____ My customers leave the studio feeling like a million dollars!

WHAT NATIONALITY DO YOU THINK HAS THE BEST FASHION SENSE?
Probably the Italians. [3]____

HAVE YOU EVER BEEN TO A COSTUME PARTY?
I hate costume parties. But I can remember one, when I was ten.

WHAT DID YOU GO AS?
My mother made me and my younger sister dress as a bride and bridegroom – I was the bridegroom! [4]____

HAVE YOU EVER MET SOMEONE WHO WAS WEARING EXACTLY THE SAME OUTFIT AS YOU?
Never, thank goodness! I'm lucky because I can choose from a large selection of our collection each season!

HAVE YOU EVER FALLEN BECAUSE YOU WERE WEARING VERY HIGH HEELS?
I've never fallen, but once I had to take off my shoes in the middle of a reception at the House of Lords! [5]____

WHAT DID YOU DO?
I walked out into the street in bare feet and jumped into a taxi!

HAVE YOU EVER DESIGNED CLOTHES FOR A MAN?
Yes, I have.

WHEN WAS IT?
It was when I was studying at the London College of Fashion. I designed my first men's wear collection – shirts, pants, and leather jackets. [6]____ He didn't need to buy any clothes that year!

Glossary
bride / bridegroom a woman / man on the day of her / his wedding
The House of Lords the second house of the British Parliament

2 GRAMMAR
present perfect or simple past? (1)

a Look at the last four questions in the interview. Answer with a partner.

1 Which questions are about experiences sometime in Lindka's life?
2 Which questions are about a specific moment in Lindka's past?
3 What does *ever* mean in the questions that begin with *Have you ever...?*

b ➤ p.132 Grammar Bank 4B. Learn more about the present perfect and simple past and practice them.

3 LISTENING

a 2 26 Listen to four people answering the question *Have you ever bought something that you've never worn?* What did they buy? Write 1–4 in the boxes. (There is one item you don't need.)

☐ a coat ☐ some sports clothes ☐ a skirt
☐ some pants ☐ a shirt

b Listen again. What was the problem with the clothes? Write 1–4 in the boxes.

This person...
☐ bought something online, but didn't like the clothes when they arrived.
☐ bought the clothes too quickly and later didn't like them.
☐ wanted to look like a famous singer, but looked like another.
☐ suddenly didn't need the new clothes anymore.

c Have you ever bought something that you've never worn? What was it?

4 VOCABULARY shopping

a 2 27 Listen to some sentences from the listening. Fill in the blanks with one word. With a partner, say what the highlighted phrases mean.

1 I remember when I was in the _____ room I thought they looked amazing.
2 I _____ it on eBay.
3 I hate clothes shopping, and I never _____ things on.
4 I didn't have the receipt, so I couldn't _____ it back.
5 Well, I bought it _____ from a website that has cheap deals.

b ➤ p.155 Vocabulary Bank *Shopping*.

5 PRONUNCIATION *c* and *ch*

a How is *c* pronounced in these words? Put them in the right row.

account auction city click clothes
credit card customer decide nice
proceed receipt

k key	
s snake	

b 2 30 Listen and check. When is *c* pronounced /s/?

c 2 31 How is *ch* usually pronounced? Listen and circle the two words where *ch* is pronounced differently. How is it pronounced in these words?

change cheap checkout
chemistry chic choose

d Practice saying the words in **a** and **c**.

6 SPEAKING

a Complete the questions with the past participle of the verb.

1 **Have you ever** _____ (*buy*) or _____ (*sell*) anything on eBay? What? Did you pay or get a good price?
2 **Have you ever** _____ (*buy*) something online and had a problem with it? What was it? What did you do?
3 **Have you ever** _____ (*have*) an argument with a salesperson? What was it about?
4 **Have you ever** _____ (*try*) to exchange something without the receipt? Were you successful?
5 **Have you ever** accidentally _____ (*take*) something from a store without paying? What did you take? What happened?
6 **Have you ever** _____ (*buy*) shoes without trying them on? Did they fit?
7 **Have you ever** _____ (*get*) to the supermarket checkout and then found you didn't have enough money? What did you do?
8 **Have you ever** _____ (*lose*) your credit card? Where did you lose it? Did you get it back?

b Ask other students question **1**. Try to find somebody who says *Yes, I have*. Then ask him or her the simple past questions. Do the same for questions **2–8**.

G *something, anything, nothing*, etc.
V adjectives ending *-ed* and *-ing*
P /ɛ/, /oʊ/, and /ʌ/

Did you do anything on the weekend?

No, nothing. I didn't do anything.

4C Lost weekend

1 LISTENING

a (2.32)) Listen to a news story about Steve. How did he spend his weekend?

b Listen again and answer the questions.

1 What does Steve do?
2 What floor was his office on?
3 What happened when he first pressed the elevator button?
4 How did he try to get help?
5 Where did Steve's wife think he was?
6 How did Steve get out of the elevator on Monday morning? How did he feel?
7 What is Steve going to do every day now?

c Have you (or has anyone you know) ever had a similar experience? What happened?

2 GRAMMAR
something, anything, nothing, etc.

a (2.33)) Look at three sentences from the story. Can you remember the missing words? Listen and check.

1 I pressed the button again, but _____ happened.
2 The police couldn't find him _____.
3 They called the emergency number and _____ came and repaired the elevator.

b Complete the rule with **people**, **places**, or **things**.

1 Use *something, anything*, and *nothing* for _____.
2 Use *somebody, anybody*, and *nobody* for _____.
3 Use *somewhere, anywhere*, and *nowhere* for _____.

c ➤ p.132 Grammar Bank 4C. Learn more about *something, anything, nothing*, etc. and practice them.

3 PRONUNCIATION /ɛ/, /oʊ/, and /ʌ/

a What sound do the pink letters make? Write **a**, **b**, or **c**.

1 ☐ Nobody knows where he goes.
2 ☐ Somebody's coming to lunch.
3 ☐ I never said anything.
4 ☐ I've done nothing since Sunday.
5 ☐ Don't tell anybody about the message.
6 ☐ There's nowhere to go except home.

b (2.35)) Listen and check. Practice saying the sentences.

c (2.36)) Listen and answer the questions.

What did you buy? *Nothing. I didn't buy anything.*

4 READING

a Read the article once. What is the best summary?

a People who answered the survey have boring weekends.
b People who use Facebook have more exciting weekends.
c People sometimes don't tell the truth about their weekend.

b Read the article again. With a partner, choose a, b, or c.

1 The survey has shown that 25% of people...
   a have very exciting weekends.
   b lie about their weekend.
   c go out on a Saturday night.
2 30% of the people they interviewed...
   a needed to go to work on the weekend.
   b had a very tiring week.
   c didn't want to go out on the weekend.
3 Some people don't tell the truth about their weekend because...
   a their real weekend is very boring.
   b they don't want to make their friends jealous.
   c they forget what they have done.
4 Social networking sites make people...
   a spend more time on the computer.
   b try to make their lives seem more exciting.
   c be more truthful about their lives.

c Do you think a survey of your friends, family, and schoolmates would have similar results?

WHAT DID YOU REALLY DO ON THE WEEKEND?

The next time a friend or co-worker tells you about their amazing weekend, wait a minute before you start feeling jealous – maybe they are inventing it all!

A survey of 5,000 adults has shown that one person in four invents details about their weekend because they want to impress their friends. When they are asked, "Did you have a good weekend?" they don't like to say that they just stayed at home and watched TV because it sounds boring. So they invent the details. The most common lie that people told was "I went out on Saturday night," when really they didn't go anywhere. Other common lies were "I had a romantic dinner," "I went to a party," and "I went away for the weekend."

In fact, in the survey, 30% of people who answered the questions said that they spent their weekend sleeping or resting because they were so tired at the end of the week.

Another 30% said that they needed to work or study on the weekend. Psychologist Corinne Sweet says that people often don't tell the truth about their weekend "because we don't want to feel that everyone else is having a better time than us, if we have had a boring weekend doing housework, paperwork, or just resting after a tiring week at work." She also believes that networking sites such as Facebook and Twitter may be encouraging us to invent details about our social lives. "People can create an illusion of who they want to be and the life they want to live," says Corinne, "and of course they want that life to seem exciting."

5 SPEAKING

a Look at the questions in **b**. Plan your answers. Answer them truthfully, but **invent one answer** to make your weekend sound more exciting.

b Interview each other with the questions. Try to guess which answer your partner invented.

LAST WEEKEND

Friday
- Did you go anywhere exciting on Friday night?

Saturday
- Did you do anything around the house (cleaning, etc.) on Saturday morning?
- Did you work or study at all?
- What did you do on Saturday night?

Sunday
- Did you go anywhere nice on Sunday?
- What did you have for lunch?
- Did you do anything relaxing in the afternoon?

6 VOCABULARY

adjectives ending *-ed* and *-ing*

a Look at these two adjectives in the text: *tired* in line 13 and *tiring* in line 19. Which one describes how you feel? Which one describes things and situations?

b 2 37 Circle the right adjective in questions 1–10. Listen and check. How do you say the adjectives?

1 Do you think Sundays are usually *bored* / *boring*?
2 Are you *bored* / *boring* with your job or studies?
3 What kind of weather makes you feel *depressed* / *depressing*?
4 Why do you think the news is often *depressed* / *depressing*?
5 What activity do you find most *relaxed* / *relaxing*?
6 Do you usually feel *relaxed* / *relaxing* at the end of the weekend? Why (not)?
7 What is the most *interested* / *interesting* book you've read recently?
8 What sports are you *interested* / *interesting* in?
9 Are you *excited* / *exciting* about your next vacation?
10 What's the most *excited* / *exciting* sporting event you've ever watched?

c Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give more information if you can.

7 2 38 SONG

If You Love Somebody Set Them Free ♫

3&4 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 How long _____ to stay in Turkey?
a do you go b are you going c you are going
2 I think _____ rain tonight.
a it's going b it goes to c it's going to
3 They _____ to get married until next year.
a aren't going b don't go c not going
4 I _____ to the movies after class this evening.
a go b am going c going go
5 **A** What time _____ tomorrow? **B** At 8:00.
a you leave b do you leaving c are you leaving
6 He's the man _____ lives next door to Alice.
a who b that c where
7 Is that the store _____ sells Italian food?
a who b that c where
8 **A** _____ your bed? **B** No, I'm going to do it now.
a Have you made
b Have you make
c Has you made
9 **A** Has Anne arrived _____?
B No, but she's on her way.
a yet b almost c already
10 _____ already seen this movie! Let's change channels.
a We're b We haven't c We've
11 **A** _____ been to Africa? **B** No, never.
a Have you ever b Did you ever c Were you ever
12 **A** When _____ those shoes? **B** Last week.
a do you buy b have you bought c did you buy
13 I've never _____ this coat. It's too small.
a wear b worn c wore
14 There's _____ at the door. Can you go and open it, please?
a something b someone c somewhere
15 I don't want _____ to eat, thanks. I'm not hungry.
a nothing b anything c something

VOCABULARY

a Complete with a preposition.

1 We arrived _____ San Diego at 7:15.
2 I'm coming! Wait _____ me.
3 What did you ask _____, meat or fish?
4 **A** Are you going to buy the apartment?
B I don't know. It depends _____ the price.
5 How much did you pay _____ those shoes?

b Complete with *make* or *do*.

1 _____ the dishes
2 _____ a mistake
3 _____ an exercise
4 _____ yoga
5 _____ a noise

c Complete the missing words.

1 Dinner's ready. Could you please s_____ the table?
2 I'll cook if you do the d_____.
3 Where are the changing rooms? I want to tr_____ o_____ this sweater.
4 If you want to take something back to a store, you need to have the r_____.
5 These shoes don't f_____ me. They're too small.
6 The flight to Miami is now leaving from g_____ 12.
7 If you have a lot of luggage, you can find a c_____ over there.
8 First, you need to go to the ch_____-i_____ desk where you get your boarding pass.
9 International flights depart from T_____ 2.
10 There are e_____ to the second and third floors.

d Circle the right adjective.

1 This exercise is really *bored* / *boring*.
2 I never feel *relaxed* / *relaxing* the day before I go on vacation.
3 It was a very *excited* / *exciting* game.
4 Jack is *depressed* / *depressing*. He lost his job.
5 Are you *interested* / *interesting* in art?

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1	just	Monday	something	socks
2	nowhere	clothes	worry	go
3	search	chemistry	cheap	choose
4	customer	center	city	nice
5	jacket	change	enjoy	yet

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 a|rri|vals 3 teen|ag|er 5 a|rrange|ment
2 o|ppo|site 4 de|li|ve|ry

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article. What were thieves stealing in a) Sweden b) Denmark? Answer the questions below.

1 Where did the first robbery take place?
2 Who were the thieves and what did they steal?
3 Who helped the police to solve the crime?
4 How long does it take to get from Malmö to Copenhagen?
5 Why were robberies taking place in both cities?
6 Did the police catch the thieves?
7 Why is it easier to steal from many stores these days?
8 Why is it not a solution to ask Danish shoe shops to display the left shoe?

b Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text. Guess their meaning from the context. Check with your teacher or with a dictionary.

Shoe stores discover matching crimes

Swedish fictional detectives like Wallander and Lisbeth Salander are famous worldwide. But recently real-life Swedish police were completely puzzled by a mysterious crime. Somebody was stealing expensive designer shoes from shoe stores in Sweden – but not pairs of shoes, only the left shoes, the ones that were on display.

The first robbery took place in a shopping mall in Malmö, Sweden's third-largest city. Staff at a shoe store saw two men stealing at their boutique. They escaped with seven left shoes which – if paired with the right shoes – were worth $1,400.

In the end, it was store's salespeople who pointed the police in the right direction – to Denmark, where stores traditionally display the right shoe in their store windows. "We noticed that left shoes were disappearing in the past, but we never caught the thieves," said a salesperson. "Since we know that Danish stores display the right shoes, we thought that the matching shoes were probably disappearing as well in stores in Denmark." Malmö, home to 125 shoe stores, is only a 30-minute train ride away from Copenhagen, which has several hundred stores, and many brands are sold in both cities.

Yesterday, police finally announced that they had arrested the men responsible for the robberies. But Ms. Johansson, a Swedish shoe store owner, fears that shoe store robberies will increase this year. "Shoes are attractive to steal – they are easy to move and easy to sell and they have become very expensive lately. Also many stores have cut the number of salespeople they employ."

Police in Malmö have thought of asking Danish shoe stores to also display the left shoe. But this won't work. All the thieves will have to do is move to Germany – where they also display the right shoe...

VIDEO CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

2 39 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Paul

Gurjot

Ellie

Elise

Justin

1 Paul went to the airport _____.
   a to get a plane to London
   b to get a plane to Frankfurt
   c to meet a friend from Frankfurt
2 Tonight Gurjot is _____.
   a seeing a movie
   b going to a Chinese restaurant
   c meeting an old friend
3 Ellie _____ ironing.
   a hates b doesn't mind c likes
4 The shoes Elise bought online _____.
   a were the wrong size
   b never arrived
   c were a beautiful color
5 Last weekend Justin _____.
   a went to a party
   b bought a movie online
   c relaxed at the beach

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ talk about three plans you have for next month using *going to*, and make three predictions
2 ☐ say three arrangements you have for tomorrow using the present continuous
3 ☐ explain what the following three words mean, using expressions for paraphrasing:
   a a thief b a shopping mall c a shoe
4 ☐ say three things you have already done or haven't done yet today
5 ☐ ask a partner three questions about his/her experiences using *ever*. Answer your partner's questions
6 ☐ say three sentences using *something*, *anywhere*, and *nobody*

VIDEO **Short movies** Shopping in the UK
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G comparative adjectives and adverbs, *as...as*
V time expressions: *spend time*, etc.
P sentence stress

Are we living faster?

Yes, we need to slow down.

5A No time for anything

1 READING & VOCABULARY time expressions

a Read an article about living faster and match the headings to the paragraphs.

- ☐ No time for Snow White
- ☐ No time to write
- ☐ No time to wait
- ☐ More time on the road
- ☐ No time for Van Gogh
- ☐ No time to stop

We're living faster, but are we living better?

1

People in cities around the world walk 10 percent more quickly than they did twenty years ago. Singapore, a world business center, is at the top of the list for fast walkers.

2

In the US, there is a book called *One-Minute Bedtime Stories* for children. These are shorter versions of traditional stories, especially written for busy parents who need to save time.

3

People aren't as patient as they were in the past. If the elevator takes more than 15 seconds to arrive, people get very impatient because they think they're wasting time. It's exactly the same when an Internet page does not open immediately.

4

Written communication on the Internet is getting shorter and shorter and using more and more abbreviations, like BRB (be right back) or NP (no problem). Twitter only allows you to use 140 characters, and now a new social networking site has a limit of just ten words.

5

Even in our free time we do things in a hurry. Twenty years ago when people went to art galleries, they spent ten seconds looking at each picture. Today they spend much less time – just three seconds!

6

Our cars are faster, but the traffic is worse, so we drive more slowly. The average speed of cars in New York City is 9.3 miles per hour. We spend more time than ever sitting in our cars, feeling stressed because we aren't going to arrive on time.

b Read the article again. One paragraph contains an invented piece of information. Which one is it?

c Look at the highlighted time expressions and guess their meaning.

d In pairs, cover the text and look at the paragraph headings in **a.** Can you remem the information in the text? Have you noticed any of these things happening wh you live?

e Look at a questionnaire about living faste In pairs, ask and answer the questions. Answer with *often*, *sometimes*, or *never* an give more information.

QUESTIONNAIRE

How fast is **your** life?

1 Do people tell you that you talk too quickly?
2 Do you get impatient when other people are talking?
3 Are you the first person to finish at mealtimes?
4 When you are walking along a street, do you feel frustrated when you are behind people who are walking more slowly?
5 Do you get irritable if you sit for an hour without doing anything, e.g., waiting for the doctor?
6 Do you walk out of stores and restaurants if there is a line?

f ➤ **Communication** *How fast is your life?* *p.101.* Read the results. Do you agree?

2 GRAMMAR comparative adjectives and adverbs, *as...as*

a Look at the following words from the text. Are they adjectives, adverbs, or both?

quickly fast busy patient
bad slowly stressed

b Circle the right form. Check (✓) if both are correct.

1 Life is *faster* / *more fast* than before.
2 Traffic in cities is *more bad* / *worse* than it was.
3 Everybody is *busyer* / *busier* than they were five years ago.
4 We are *more stressed* / *stresseder* than our grandparents were.
5 We do everything *more quickly* / *faster*.
6 People aren't *as patient as* / *as patient than* they were before.

c ➤ p.134 Grammar Bank 5A. Learn more about comparatives and *as...as* and practice them.

3 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

The /ə/ sound
Remember! Unstressed words like *a*, *as*, and *than* have the sound /ə/, and *-er* is pronounced /ər/.

a 2.41 Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm and try to get the /ə/ sound right.

1 I'm **busier** than a **year** ago.
2 My **life** is **more stressful** than in the **past**.
3 I **work harder** than **before**.
4 I **walk** and **talk faster**.
5 I'm **not** as **relaxed** as I **was** a **few years ago**.

b Are any of the sentences true for you?

4 SPEAKING

a Think about how your life has changed over the last 3–5 years. Read the questions below and think about your answers.

1 Do you spend more or less time on these things? Say why.

working or studying	sleeping
getting to work / school	cooking
sitting in traffic	shopping
talking to friends	eating
meeting friends	using your phone
being online	using your computer

2 Do you have more or less free time? Why?
3 What don't you have time for nowadays? What would you like to have more time for?

b Answer the questions with a partner. Whose life has changed more?

5 LISTENING

a You're going to listen to an expert talking about how to live your life more slowly. Look at her five main tips (= good ideas). Guess what the missing words are.

1 Whatever you are doing, just try to _____ _____ and enjoy it.
Example: _____
2 Make a list of three things that are _____ _____ for you.
Example: _____
3 Don't try to do _____ _____ at the same time.
Example: _____
4 Sit down and do _____ for half an hour every day.
Example: _____
5 Be near _____.
Example: _____

b 2.42 Listen and check. Then listen again and write one example for each tip.

c Are there any tips that you think you might use? Why (not)?

G superlatives (+ *ever* + present perfect)
V describing a town or city
P word and sentence stress

What did you think of Rio?

It's the most beautiful city I've ever been to.

5B Superlative cities

Chicago

Washington, D.C.

New Orleans

Miami

Minneapolis/St. Paul

1 GRAMMAR superlatives (+ *ever* + present perfect)

a Look at the photos of five US cities. What do you know about them? Have you been to any of them?

b Read the article. With a partner guess which city from **a** goes in each blank.

Travel survey gives its verdict on American cities.

New York City is the **dirtiest** city in the US, says a survey by travel website, Travel and Leisure, but it is **the most stylish** city and it has **the best** musicals. According to the survey, travelers say that...

1 _____ has **the best** museums.
2 _____ is **the friendliest** city.
3 _____ has **the most aggressive** drivers.
4 _____ has **the best** architecture.
5 _____ is **the cleanest** city.

"Travel really can transform your life, and these are a few of the trips that can make it happen," says a Travel and Leisure editor.

c Look at 1–5 in the survey in **b**. Think about your country or continent. Which cities would *you* choose?

d Look at the **bold** superlative adjectives in the survey. How do you make the superlative of...?

1 a one-syllable adjective
2 a two-syllable adjective that ends in *-y*
3 a three-syllable adjective
4 *good* and *bad*

e ➤ p.134 Grammar Bank 5B. Learn more about superlatives and practice them.

2 PRONUNCIATION word and sentence stress

a Underline the stressed syllable in the **bold** adjectives.

1 What's the most **beautiful** city you've ever been to?
2 What's the most **expensive** thing you've ever bought?
3 Who's the most **impatient** person you know?
4 Who's the most **generous** person in your family?
5 What's the most **frightening** movie you've ever seen?
6 What's the most **exciting** sport you've ever played?
7 What's the most **interesting** book you've read recently?
8 What's the most **romantic** restaurant you've ever been to?

b 2 44 Listen and check. Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm. Which words are stressed?

c Work with a partner. **A** answer question 1 with a sentence. **B** ask for more information. Change roles for question 2, etc.

The most beautiful city I've ever been to is Rio de Janeiro. *When did you go there?*

3 READING & SPEAKING

a Read the article. In pairs, answer the questions.

1 What are the three tests?
2 Do you think they are good ones?
3 Which city do you think will be the friendliest / most unfriendly?

All big cities are unfriendly – or are they?

Big cities often have a reputation for being rude, unfriendly places for tourists. Journalist Tim Moore went to four cities, *London*, *Rome*, *Paris*, and *New York City*, to find out if this is true. He went dressed as a foreign tourist and used three (not very scientific!) tests to see which city had the friendliest and most polite inhabitants. The three tests were:

1 The photo test

Tim asked people on the street to take his photo (not just one photo, but several – with his hat, without his hat, etc.). Did he find someone to do it?

2 The shopping test

Tim bought something in a store and gave the salesperson too much money. Did the person give back the extra money?

3 The accident test

Tim pretended to fall down on the street. Did anybody come and help him?

b ➤ **Communication** *The friendliest city* **A** *p.102* **B** *p.107* **C** *p.110*. Read about what happened in London, Paris, and Rome.

4 LISTENING

a (2.45)) Now listen to Tim Moore talking about what happened in New York City. How well does New York City do in each test?

b Listen again and answer the questions.

The photo test
1 Who did he ask?
2 What did the person say?
3 What happened when he asked for more photos?

The shopping test
4 Where was the souvenir store?
5 What did he buy?
6 How many people did he buy souvenirs from?
7 Did he get the right change?

The accident test
8 Where did he use the accident test?
9 Did anyone help him?
10 What did the man say?

c Think about the nearest big city to where you live. Imagine you used the three tests there. What do you think would happen? Is it a friendly city?

5 VOCABULARY describing a town or city

a Think about how to answer these questions about where you live. Compare with a partner.

- Do you live in a village, a town, or a city?
- Where is it?
- How big is it?
- What's the population?
- What's it like?

b ➤ **p.156 Vocabulary Bank** *Describing a town or city.*

6 WRITING

➤ **p.114 Writing** *Describing where you live.* Write a description of the place where you live.

7 (2.49)) SONG *Nobody Does It Better* ♫

G quantifiers, *too, not enough*
V health and the body
P /ʌ/, /u/, /aɪ/, and /ɛ/

I watch too much TV.

I don't spend enough time in the sun.

5C How much is too much?

1 SPEAKING

a With a partner, answer the questions below.

DIET & LIFESTYLE QUESTIONNAIRE

1 Do you drink coffee? How many cups do you drink a day? What kind of coffee? What time do you drink your last cup of the day?

2 How much time do you spend a day in the sun...?
a in the winter
b in the summer
c when you're on vacation
Do you always wear sunscreen?

3 Do you play a lot of video or computer games? What are your favorite games? How much time do you spend a week playing them?

4 How often do you eat chocolate? What kind of chocolate do you prefer – milk, white, or dark?

5 How many hours a day do you watch TV...?
a during the week
b on weekends
What kinds of TV shows do you watch regularly?

b Do you think any of your habits are unhealthy?

2 READING & LISTENING

a Read the article once. Does it change what you think about your answers to the questionnaire?

b Read the article again. Look at the highlighted words related to health and the body. Match them to a picture or definition.

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____

4 *noun* it covers the outside of a person's body
5 *verb* to stop something from happening
6 *noun* something that makes you unwell
7 *adj* feeling worried or nervous

Everything **BAD** is **GOOD** for you

COFFEE We all know that a cup of coffee helps to wake you up in the morning, but several studies show that drinking coffee helps to prevent some illnesses like diabetes and Parkinson's disease. Experts say that you can safely drink three cups of espresso during the day, but if you drink too much coffee it can make you feel anxious or keep you awake at night.

SUNLIGHT Spending a long time in the sun is dangerous and can give you skin cancer. But on the other hand, not spending enough time in the sun is also bad for you because sunlight helps us to produce vitamin D. This vitamin is important for strong bones and a healthy immune system, and it also makes people feel happier. Nowadays, many people don't get enough sunlight because they wear sunscreen all the time, especially on their faces. However, don't spend too long in the sun – 15 minutes a day without sunscreen is a healthy amount, and not at midday.

COMPUTER GAMES You probably worry about how much time you or your children waste playing computer games. But in fact some studies show that these games can help us learn important skills. It seems that computer games stimulate the brain and that people who often play them are probably better at solving problems and making quick decisions. But don't spend too many hours in front of the computer – not more than about two hours a day.

c (2.50)) Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

d Now cover the text. Can you remember...?

1 what is good about coffee, sunlight, and computer games
2 what you need to be careful about

e (2.51)) With a partner, decide in what ways you think chocolate and watching TV could be good for you. Listen to a radio program and check your answers.

f Listen again. Answer the questions.

1 What does chocolate have in common with grape juice?
2 What kind of chocolate is a) good for you b) not good for you?
3 How are TV series different from the ones 20 years ago? Why is this good for us?
4 What can we learn from reality TV shows?

g Do the article and the radio program make you feel happier about your lifestyle?

3 GRAMMAR quantifiers, *too, not enough*

a Can you remember how to use *much, many*, etc? In pairs, choose the correct word or phrase for each sentence. Say why the other one is wrong.

1 How *much | many* cups of coffee do you drink a day?
2 I don't spend *much | many* time in the sun.
3 I eat *a lot of | many* chocolate.
4 Drinking *a few | a little* grape juice can be good for you.
5 I only have *a few | a little* computer games.
6 My parents read *a lot | a lot of.*

b Look at some sentences from the reading and listening. Match the **bold** phrases in 1 and 2 to meanings **A** and **B**.

1 Don't eat **too much** chocolate or **too many** sugary snacks if you don't want to gain weight.
Don't spend **too** long in the sun.
2 Nowadays, many people **don't** get **enough** sunlight.
We are **not** active **enough**.

A less than you need or than is good for you
B more than you need or than is good for you

c Look again at the sentences with *enough*. What's the position of *enough* a) with a noun b) with an adjective?

d ➤ p.134 Grammar Bank 5C. Learn more about quantifiers, *too*, and *not enough* and practice them.

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

/ʌ/, /u/, /aɪ/, and /ɛ/

a Cross out the word with a different pronunciation.

ʌ	up	enough much none busy
u	boot	few should too food
aɪ	bike	try diet little like
ɛ	egg	many any healthy water

b (2.54)) Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

c Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Say why.

Do you think you read enough? — *Not really. I only read school textbooks, not for pleasure.*

Do you think you...?

- read enough
- eat enough fruit and vegetables
- play enough sports or exercise enough
- drink enough water
- have enough free time
- eat too much fast food
- spend too much time online
- spend too much money on things you don't need
- work or study too many hours
- have too many clothes
- do too much housework
- get too much homework

Practical English The wrong shoes

EPISODE 3

1 VIDEO ROB HAS A PROBLEM

a 2.55 Watch or listen to Rob and Holly and answer the questions.

1 What reason does Rob give for why he isn't in shape?
2 Why does he find it difficult to eat less?
3 How does he keep fit in London?
4 Why doesn't he do the same in New York?
5 How does Jenny keep fit?
6 What does Holly think about this?
7 What does Holly suggest that Rob could do?
8 What does Rob need to do first?

American and British English
sneakers = American English; *trainers* = British English
store = American English; *shop* = British English

b 2.56 Look at the box on making suggestions. Listen and repeat the phrases.

Making suggestions with *Why don't you...?*
A Why don't you get a bike?
B That's a good idea, but I'm only here for a month.
A Why don't you come and play basketball?
B That's a great idea!

c Practice making suggestions with a partner.

A You have problems remembering English vocabulary. Tell **B**.
B Make two suggestions.
A Respond. If you don't think it's a good idea, say why.

d Change roles.

B You are a foreigner in **A**'s country. You have problems meeting new people.

2 VOCABULARY shopping

Do the quiz with a partner.

SHOPPING QUIZ

1 What four letters do you often see in clothes that tell you the size?
2 What do the letters mean?
3 What's the name of the room where you can try on clothes?
4 What's the name of the piece of paper a salesperson gives you when you buy something?
5 How do you say these prices?
£25.99 75p $45 15¢ €12.50

3 VIDEO TAKING SOMETHING BACK TO A STORE

a 2.57 Cover the dialogue and watch or listen. Answer the questions.

1 What's the problem with Rob's sneakers?
2 What does he do in the end?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Can I help you, sir?	Yes. Do you have these in an eight?
Just a _____, I'll go and check.	
Here you are, these are an eight. Do you want to _____ them on?	No, thanks. I'm sure they'll be fine. How much are they?
They're $83.94.	Oh, it says $72.99.
Yes, but there's an added sales tax of _____%.	Oh, OK. Do you take MasterCard?
Sure.	
Can I help you?	Yes, I bought these about half an hour ago.
Yes, I remember. Is there a _____?	Yes, I'm afraid they're too small.
What _____ are they?	They're an eight. But I take a UK eight.
Oh, right. Yes, a UK eight is a US nine.	Do you have a pair?
I'll go and check. Just a minute.	
I'm _____, but we don't have these in a nine. But we do have these and they're the _____ price. Or you can have a refund.	Uh...I'll take this pair then, please.
No problem. Do you have the _____?	Yes, here you are.
Brilliant.	

A pair
We often use *a pair* to talk about plural clothes, e.g., *a pair of shoes, sneakers, boots, jeans, pants*, etc.

c 2.58 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practice the dialogue with a partner.

e In pairs, role-play the dialogue.

A You're a customer. You bought some jeans yesterday. They're too big.

B You're a salesperson. You don't have the same jeans in **A**'s size. Offer **A** a different pair or a refund. You begin with *Can I help you, sir / ma'am?*

f Change roles.

B You're a customer. You bought some boots yesterday. They're too small.

A You're a salesperson. You don't have the same boots in **B**'s size. Offer **B** a different pair or a refund. You begin with *Can I help you, sir / ma'am?*

4 VIDEO ROB DECIDES TO EXERCISE

a 2.59 Watch or listen and circle the right answer.

1 Rob went to *Boston / Brooklyn*.
2 He *shows / doesn't show* Jenny his new sneakers.
3 Jenny goes running every *morning / evening* in Central Park.
4 She wants to go running with him at *6:45 / 7:45*.
5 Rob thinks it's too *early / late*.
6 They agree to meet at *6:45 / 7:15*.
7 Holly thinks Rob *has / doesn't have* a lot of energy.

b Look at the **Social English phrases**. Can you remember any of the missing words?

Social English phrases
Rob Have you _____ a good day?
Jenny Oh, you _____. Meetings!
Jenny Why _____ you come with me?
Rob Can we _____ it a bit later?
Rob _____, seven forty-five?
Jenny _____ make it seven fifteen.

c 2.60 Watch or listen and complete the phrases.

d Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

Can you...?
- ☐ make suggestions to do something
- ☐ take something you have bought back to the store
- ☐ arrange a time to meet somebody

G *will / won't* (predictions)
V opposite verbs
P *'ll, won't*

I'm taking my driving test today.

You'll fail.

6A Are you a pessimist?

1 VOCABULARY opposite verbs

a With a partner, write the opposites of these verbs.

win _____ buy _____ remember _____
turn on _____ start _____ / _____

b ➤ p.157 Vocabulary Bank *Opposite verbs.*

2 GRAMMAR *will / won't* (predictions)

a Look at the cartoon. Which fish is an optimist? Why? Are you an optimist or a pessimist?

optimist
pessimist

b Look at the phrase book app. Read the **You Say** phrases. Then write the **A Pessimist Says** responses.

He won't pay you back. They'll be late. You won't pass.
~~It'll rain.~~ They'll lose. You won't understand a word.
You won't find a parking space. You'll break your leg.

c 3 3 Listen and check. Repeat the responses.

d Practice in pairs. **A** (book open) read the **You Say** phrases. **B** (book closed) say the **A Pessimist Says** responses. Then change roles.

e Look at the **A Pessimist Says** phrases again. Do they refer to the present or the future?

f ➤ p.136 Grammar Bank 6A. Learn more about *will / won't* and practice them.

g Imagine now that you are an optimist. With a partner make affirmative predictions to respond to the **You Say** sentences in the phrase book.

1 It'll be a great evening.

3 PRONUNCIATION *'ll, won't*

a 3 5 Listen and repeat the contractions. Copy the rhythm.

I'll	I'll be late	I'll be late for work.
You'll	You'll break	You'll break your leg.
She'll	She'll miss	She'll miss the train.
It'll	It'll rain	It'll rain tomorrow.
They'll	They'll fail	They'll fail the exam.

b 3 6 Listen. Can you hear the difference?

	clock	want	I want to pass.
	phone	won't	I won't pass.

c 3 7 Listen and write six sentences.

4 READING

a Read an article about the actor Hugh Laurie. What two things do Hugh Laurie and Dr. House have in common?

A PESSIMIST PLAYS A PESSIMIST

DR. GREGORY HOUSE, the main character in the hit TV series *House, M.D.*, is famous for being a pessimist. But it is not only Dr. House who is a pessimist. Hugh Laurie, the actor who plays him, is a pessimist, too.

Laurie never thought that *House, M.D.* was going to be a success. Even after seven seasons, he still feels pessimistic about it. He said in a recent interview, "If we do a bad show next week, they'll say, 'That's it. No more.' It'll just stop. I am, of course, someone who is constantly expecting a plane to drop on my head, if not today then tomorrow."

Like Dr. House, Laurie is also a talented musician and is passionate about the blues. He recently went to New Orleans to record an album in which he plays 15 of his favorite songs. But of course, he doesn't think that people will like it.

When he was asked on a TV show why he was so pessimistic about life, Laurie said it was because he is Scottish. "I definitely think that's where it comes from."

Because of his reputation as a pessimist, people always talk to him about positive thinking. He says that complete strangers come up to him on the street and say, "Cheer up, it'll never happen!"

b Read the article again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Say why.

1 Hugh Laurie always thinks the worst will happen.
2 He thinks they will make many more seasons of *House, M.D.*
3 He doesn't think his album will be successful.
4 He thinks that Scottish people are optimistic.
5 People often try to make him feel happier.

c Have you seen any episodes of *House, M.D.*? Do you like...?
a the character b the actor

5 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 38 Listen to the introduction to a radio program. Why is positive thinking good for you?

b Try to guess the missing words in these callers' tips.

Caller 1 Live in the _____, not in the _____.
Caller 2 Think _____ thoughts, not negative ones.
Caller 3 Don't spend a lot of time reading the _____ or watching the _____ on TV.
Caller 4 Every week make a list of all the _____ _____ that happened to you.
Caller 5 Try to use _____ _____ when you speak to other people.

c 39 Listen and check.

d Listen again. Write down any extra information you hear. Which tips do you think are useful? Do you have any tips of your own?

e Ask and answer with a partner. Use a phrase from the box and say why. Which of you is more optimistic?

ARE YOU A **POSITIVE** THINKER?

Do you think...

+ you'll have a nice weekend?
+ you'll pass your next English exam?
+ you'll get a good (or better) job in the future?
+ you'll get an interesting email or message from someone tonight?
+ you'll meet some new friends on your next vacation?
+ you'll live to be 100?
+ you'll get to the end of this book?

Responding to predictions
I hope so. / I hope not.
I think so. / I don't think so.
I doubt it.
Maybe. / Perhaps.
Probably (not).
Definitely (not).

Do you think you'll have a nice weekend? — *I hope so. I think the weather will be good and...*

G *will / won't* (decisions, offers, promises)
V verb + *back*
P word stress: two-syllable verbs

6B I'll never forget you

1 GRAMMAR
will / won't (decisions, offers, promises)

a Look at the cartoons. What do you think the missing phrases are?

b 3 10 Listen and fill in the blanks.

c Look at the cartoons again. In which one does somebody...?

- ☐ promise to do something
- ☐ decide to have something
- ☐ offer to do something

d ➤ **p.136 Grammar Bank 6B.** Learn more about making offers, promises, and decisions and practice them.

e ➤ **Communication** *I'll game p.102.* Play the game.

2 PRONUNCIATION
word stress: two-syllable verbs

Stress in two-syllable verbs
Remember that most two-syllable verbs are stressed on the second syllable.

a Look at the two-syllable verbs below. Which syllable are they stressed on? Put them in the right column.

a|gree a|rrive borr|ow com|plain de|cide de|pend
for|get ha|ppen im|press in|vent in|vite o|ffer
prac|tice pre|fer pro|mise re|ceive re|pair sun|bathe

1st syllable	2nd syllable

b 3 12 Listen and check.

It's a secret.

OK, I won't tell anyone.

1 **A** That's two burgers, an extra-large order of French fries, and two ice cream sundaes. Anything else?
B Yes, _____, please.

2 **A** Do I want to go back to the previous version? Do I press Yes or No?
B I need to do my homework now. _____ when I finish.

3 **A** _____! I promise!
B Well, hurry up. I can't wait much longer.
A Just one more kiss...

3 SPEAKING & LISTENING

a Look at the sentences. Talk to a partner.

1 When do you think people say them?
2 What do you think they all have in common?

I'll pay you back.
This won't hurt.
I'll come back and finish the job tomorrow.
I'll text you when I get there.
I'll do it later.
I won't tell anyone.
We'll build new schools and hospitals.

b Look at the title of a newspaper article. Do you think it's another promise that people often break?

I'll never forget you

Steve Smith from Devon in the UK met Carmen Ruiz-Perez from Spain 17 years ago when they were both in their 20s. Carmen was studying English at a language school in Steve's town, Torbay.

They fell in love and got engaged. But a year later, Carmen moved to France for work, and the long-distance relationship first cooled and then ended.

A few years later Steve tried to get in touch with Carmen again, but she had changed her address in Paris. So he sent her a letter to her mother's address in Spain. In the letter, he asked her if she was married and if she ever thought of him. He gave her his telephone number and asked her to get in touch. But Carmen's mother didn't send the letter to her daughter and it fell down behind the fireplace, where it stayed for ten years...

Adapted from a newspaper

c Read the article and answer the questions.

1 What were Carmen and Steve doing in Steve's town?
2 Why didn't they get married?
3 Why didn't Steve's letter get to Carmen?

d 3 13 Now listen to part of a news program and answer the questions.

What happened...?

1 when the workers found the letter
2 when Carmen got the letter
3 when Carmen called Steve
4 when they met a few days later
5 last week

4 VOCABULARY verb + *back*

a Look at the sentences. What's the difference between *go* and *go back*?

I'm **going** to work. I'm **going back** to work.

b Complete the dialogues with a phrase from the list.

call you back	come back	give it back
pay me back	send it back	take it back

1 A The shirt you bought me is too small.
B Don't worry. I'll _____ to the store and exchange it. I still have the receipt.

2 A Hi, Jack. It's me, Karen.
B I can't talk now, I'm driving – I'll _____ in 15 minutes.

3 A Could I see the manager?
B She's at lunch now. Could you _____ in about half an hour?

4 A That's my pen you're using! _____!
B No, it's not. It's mine.

5 A Can you lend me 50 dollars, Nick?
B It depends. When can you _____?

6 A I bought this jacket on the Internet, but it's too big.
B Can't you _____?

c 3 14 Listen and check. In pairs, practice the dialogues.

d Ask and answer in groups. Ask for more information.

1 When someone leaves you a message on your phone, do you usually **call** them **back** immediately?
2 If you buy something online that is not exactly what you wanted, do you always **send** it **back**?
3 Have you ever lent somebody money and he or she didn't **pay** you **back**?
4 When you **come back** after a vacation, do you usually feel better or worse than before?
5 When you borrow a book or a DVD from a friend, do you usually remember to **give** it **back**? What about if you lend something to your friends?
6 If you buy something to wear from a store and then decide you don't like it, do you usually **take** it **back**?

5 3 15 SONG

Reach Out I'll Be There ♫

G review of verb forms: present, past, and future
V adjectives + prepositions
P the letters *ow*

I dreamed about a road.

That means you're going to travel.

6C The meaning of dreaming

1 READING & LISTENING

a Do you often remember your dreams? Do you think dreams can tell us anything about the future?

b 3 16 Listen to a psychoanalyst talking to a patient about his dreams. Number the pictures 1–5 in the correct order.

c Listen again and fill in the blanks with a verb in the correct form

Dr. Allen So, tell me, what did you dream about?
Patient I was at a party. There were a lot of people.
Dr. What were they [1]_____?
P They were talking and [2]_____.
Dr. And then what happened?
P Then, suddenly I was in a garden. There [3]_____ a lot of flowers.
Dr. Flowers, yes, yes... what kind of flowers?
P I [4]_____ really see – it was dark. And I could hear music – somebody was _____ the violin.
Dr. The violin? Go on.
P And then I [6]_____ an owl, a big owl in a tree...
Dr. How did you [7]_____? Were you frightened of it?
P No, not frightened really, no, but I [8]_____ I felt very cold. Especially my feet – they were freezing. And then I [9]_____.
Dr. Your feet? Mmm, very interesting, very interesting indeed. Were you [10]_____ any shoes?
P No, no I wasn't.
Dr. Tell me, have you ever [11]_____ this dream before?
P No, never. So what does it [12]_____, Doctor?

d What do you think the patient's dream means? Match four of the things in his dream with interpretations 1–4.

Understanding your dreams

You dream...	This means...
☐ that you are at a party.	1 you are going to be very busy.
☐ about flowers.	2 you're feeling positive about the future.
☐ that somebody is playing the violin.	3 you want some romance in your life.
☐ about an owl.	4 you need to ask an older person for help.

e 3 17 Listen to Dr. Allen interpreting the patient's dream. Check your answers to **d**.

f 3 18 Dr. Allen is now going to explain what picture 5 means. What do you think the meaning could be? Listen and find out.

2 GRAMMAR review of verb forms

a Look at the sentences below. Which one is the present perfect? Mark it **PP**. Then look at the other sentences. What time do they refer to? Mark them **P** (the past), **PR** (the present), or **F** (the future).

1 ☐ I was drinking coffee.
2 ☐ Maybe you'll have a meeting with your boss.
3 ☐ I saw an owl.
4 ☐ You are feeling positive.
5 ☐ You're going to meet a lot of people.
6 ☐ You work in an office.
7 ☐ I'm meeting her tonight.
8 ☐ Have you ever had this dream before?

b ➤ **p.136 Grammar bank 6C.** Review all the verb forms you've studied in Files 1–6 and practice them.

3 SPEAKING

a ➤ **Communication** *Dreams* **A** *p.103* **B** *p.108*. Role-play interpreting your partner's dream.

b Interview a partner with the questionnaire. Choose two questions from each group. Ask for more information.

REVIEW QUESTIONNAIRE

- Where do you usually buy your clothes?
- What do you like doing on the weekend?
- Are you watching any TV series right now?
- Are you studying for an exam right now?

- Where did you go on vacation last year?
- Did you do anything exciting last Saturday night?
- Where were you at 10 o'clock last night? What were you doing?
- Were you sleeping when the alarm clock rang this morning?

- Have you ever had the same dream again and again?
- Have you ever dreamed about something that then happened?

- Are you going to learn a new foreign language next year?
- Are you going to do anything exciting next weekend?
- Do you think it will be sunny tomorrow?
- Do you think your country's soccer team will win the next World Cup?
- What are you doing tonight?

4 PRONUNCIATION the letters *ow*

Pronunication of *ow*
Be careful: *ow* can be pronounced /aʊ/, e.g., *flower* or /oʊ/, e.g., *window*.

a (3) 20 Listen and repeat the two words and sounds.

aʊ owl		oʊ phone	

b Write the words in the list in the right columns.

blow borrow brown crowded
down how know low
now show shower snow
throw towel town

c (3) 21 Listen and check.

d Practice saying the sentences.

Show me the flowers.
The town is very crowded now.
Don't throw snow at the windows.
How do you know?
Can I borrow a towel for the shower?

5 VOCABULARY adjectives + prepositions

Adjectives + prepositions
Some adjectives are usually followed by certain prepositions, e.g., *Were you **frightened of** the owl?* It's useful to learn the prepositions with the adjectives.

a Fill in the blanks with a preposition.

1 Are you afraid ___ the dark?
2 Do you think chocolate is good ___ you?
3 Is your town full ___ tourists in the summer?
4 What is your country famous ___?
5 At school, what subjects were you bad ___?
6 Are you good ___ dancing?
7 Do you often get angry ___ your family? What ___?
8 Are people in your country very different ___ Americans.
9 Are people in your country nice ___ tourists?
10 Are you interested ___ politics?

b Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Say why.

5&6 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 She drives _____ than her brother.
a faster b more fast c more fastly

2 His new book isn't as good _____ his last one.
a than b that c as

3 Women spend _____ time cooking than in the past.
a less b little c fewer

4 Friday is _____ day of the week.
a the busier b the busiest c the most busy

5 It's the _____ road in the world.
a more dangerous
b dangerousest
c most dangerous

6 It's the hottest country I've _____ been to.
a never b always c ever

7 My sister drinks _____ coffee.
a too b too much c too many

8 These jeans are _____ small. Do you have them one size bigger?
a too b too much c too many

9 You haven't spent _____ on your homework.
a time enough
b enough time
c many time

10 They're playing really badly. They _____ the game.
a want win b won't win c won't to win

11 **A** My exam is today.
B Don't worry. _____.
a You'll pass b You pass c You're passing

12 **A** It's cold in here. **B** _____ the window.
a I close b I'm closing c I'll close

13 They met for the first time when they _____ in Istanbul.
a were living b are living c was living

14 **A** Have you been to the US?
B Yes, I _____ to New York last year.
a 've been b went c was going

15 **A** _____ today? **B** No, she's on vacation.
a Does she work
b Is she working
c Will she work

VOCABULARY

a Circle the right verb or phrase.

1 I *waste* / *lose* a lot of time playing games on my phone.
2 We *spend* / *take* a lot of time sitting in our cars every day.
3 Can you *borrow* / *lend* me 50 dollars?
4 I'm leaving tonight, and I'm *coming* / *coming back* on Friday.
5 This is Ben. He's *teaching* / *learning* me to play the piano.

b Write the opposite verb.

1 buy _____ 3 remember _____ 5 teach _____
2 push _____ 4 pass _____

c Write words for the definitions.

1 **cr**_____ (adj) full of people or things
2 **s**_____ (adj) opposite of *dangerous*
3 **n**_____ (adj) opposite of *quiet* (for a place)
4 **s**_____ (adj, noun) opposite of *north*
5 **m**_____ (noun) a building where you can see old things
6 **p**_____ (noun) the place where a king or queen lives
7 **m**_____ (noun) a religious building for Muslims
8 **b**_____ (noun) you have 206 of these in your body
9 **br**_____ (noun) the organ we use to think
10 **sk**_____ (noun) it covers the outside of your body

d Complete the sentences with a preposition.

1 My husband's always late. He's never _____ time for anything.
2 Are you interested _____ this TV show?
3 When I was a child, I was afraid _____ dogs.
4 I'd really like to be good _____ dancing.
5 Eating too many cookies is bad _____ you.

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1 too lose polluted much

2 eat many healthy lend

3 lot won't box doctor

4 shower now snow towel

5 receive castle mosque active

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 im|pa|tient 2 in|teres|ting 3 in|vent 4 prac|tice 5 de|cide

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the text once. Does the journalist think music made him run faster?

b Read the text again and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 The psychologist says that all kinds of music can help us exercise better.
2 He says that exercise is more fun with music.
3 Men and women prefer different music when they exercise.
4 Music helped Haile Gebreselassie break a record.
5 Most top athletes use music when they run.
6 Music can help amateur runners to run faster.
7 The journalist chose his music for the marathon.
8 All the songs helped him run faster.

c Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text. Guess their meaning from the context. Check with your teacher or with a dictionary.

Can music really make you run faster?

Costas Karageorghis, a sports psychologist, calls music "sport's legal drug." He says that exercising with music can improve athletic performance by 15 percent. The music must be carefully chosen so that the tempo or "beat" is synchronized with the exercise you are doing. According to Professor Karageorghis, music also makes you feel less pain and makes an exercise session less boring and more enjoyable.

Gym chain, *Fitness First*, recognizes the importance of music to workouts and plays music in all its clubs. The most popular song for male gym members is Survivor's *Eye of the Tiger*, while women love Abba's *Dancing Queen*.

Music works well with weightlifting, and other repetitive actions, but it can also help with running. The best example of this is Haile Gebreselassie, perhaps the world's greatest distance runner, who used the techno-pop song *Scatman* as a metronome when he broke the world 2,000 meter record. But if music was so important to Gebreselassie, why do other top runners never race with headphones?

Karageorghis says "Research has shown that for most top athletes music is less effective. Elite athletes focus more on their bodies, and less on outside stimuli like music." So although music can help amateur runners run faster and further, most top athletes prefer silence.

I decided to try running with music myself. I was going to run a half marathon, and a sports doctor gave me the perfect playlist of songs for running. When I did the race, I found that some of the tracks, like Von Kleet's *Walking on Me*, made running easier. Others made me want to throw away the mp3 player. When I crossed the line, I had beaten my previous personal best by one minute, but was it because of the music? To be honest, I felt it was probably because of the extra training.

Warren Pole in The Times

VIDEO CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

3 22 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Ian Wells Jeanna Joanna Anya

1 Three years ago Ian _____.
   a retired
   b had more free time
   c was working part time
2 When Wells talks about why he loves Paris, he doesn't mention _____.
   a the scenery b the culture c the buildings
3 Jeanna _____ junk food.
   a eats too much b doesn't eat any c eats a little
4 Joanna says her friends _____.
   a are mostly pessimists
   b think she is a pessimist
   c think she is an optimist
5 Anya often has bad dreams _____.
   a when she's having problems at work
   b after she's had a big meal
   c when she's having problems with her partner

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ compare two members of your family using adjectives and adverbs
2 ☐ talk about your town using four superlatives (*the biggest*, *the best*, etc.)
3 ☐ talk about your diet using (*not*) *enough* and *too much* / *too many*
4 ☐ make three predictions about the future using *will* / *won't*
5 ☐ make a promise, an offer, and a decision using *will* / *won't*

VIDEO **Short movies** Chicago
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G uses of the infinitive
V verbs + infinitive: *try to, forget to*, etc.
P weak form of *to*, linking

What do I need to do?

It's important not to be late.

7A How to...

1 READING & LISTENING

a Look at the poster of a well-known movie. Do you know what it's about? Have you seen it?

b With a partner, think of two pieces of advice for somebody who is going to meet his or her partner's parents for the first time.

c Now read an article adapted from the website *wikiHow*. Is your advice there?

d Read the article again and fill in the blanks with the verbs in the list.

to answer not to be ~~to do~~ (x2) to have to know
to make to say to show not to talk

e 3 23 Listen to Nico meeting his girlfriend's parents for the first time. Does the meeting start well or badly? How does it end?

f Listen again and answer the questions.

1 What does he do wrong?
2 What does he do right?

g Do you think the advice in the article would be good for people in your country? Why (not)? Do you think the advice would be the same for a girl meeting her boyfriend's parents for the first time?

How to... Survive Meeting Your Girlfriend's Parents for the First Time

It's stressful, but these top tips can help you to get it right...

Tips

1. **You need** *to do* **some "homework"** before you go. Ask your girlfriend about her parents. Where does her mother work? Does her father like basketball? Do you have any common interests? If you do this, it will be easy _____ a conversation with them.
2. **Make sure you dress** _____ the right impression. Don't wear a suit, but don't just wear your old jeans and the Che Guevara T-shirt you bought at the flea market.
3. **Be punctual.** It's very important _____ late for a first meeting.
4. **When they greet you at the door** shake the father's hand firmly (no father likes a weak handshake!). Ask your girlfriend what kind of greeting her mom will prefer.
5. **Call her parents Mr. and Mrs.** (Smith) until they ask you to call them "Dave" and "Maria."
6. **Be ready** _____ questions about yourself! Her parents will want _____ everything about you and your ambitions. Make a good impression!
7. **If you are invited for a meal,** eat everything they give you and say something positive about the meal, like "This is absolutely delicious!" Offer _____ the dishes after the meal (_____ them that you are helpful).
8. **Be yourself,** and don't be a "yes" man. If they ask you for your opinion, be honest. However, try _____ about controversial subjects – this isn't the moment to give your views on religion and politics!
9. **If the conversation is dying** and you can't think of what _____, ask them what your partner was like as a child. This is a smart tactic! All parents love talking about their children, and it shows you have a deep interest in their daughter.

Adapted from wikiHow

2 GRAMMAR
uses of the infinitive

a Match sentences a–d from the article with rules 1–4.

a ☐ If you do this, it will be easy **to have** a conversation with them.

b ☐ Offer to do the dishes after the meal (**to show** them that you are helpful).

c ☐ If the conversation is dying and you can't think of what **to say**, ask them what your partner was like as a child.

d ☐ You need **to do** some "homework" before you go.

Use the infinitive...

1 after some verbs, e.g., *need, want*, etc.
2 after adjectives
3 to give a reason for doing something
4 after a question word, e.g., *who, what, how*

b Look at the other infinitives you used to complete the article. Which rules are they?

c ➤ **p.138 Grammar Bank 7A.** Learn more about uses of the infinitive and practice them.

3 VOCABULARY verbs + infinitive

a Without looking back at the article, try to remember the missing verbs.

1 You _____ to do some homework before you go.
2 Her parents will _____ to know everything about you and your ambitions.
3 _____ to do the dishes after the meal...
4 However, _____ not to talk about controversial subjects...

b ➤ **p.158 Vocabulary Bank** *Verb forms.* Do part 1 (Verbs + infinitive).

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
weak form of *to*, linking

a 3 26 Listen to two sentences. Is *to* stressed? How is it pronounced?

I want to come.
He decided to leave.

Linking words with the same consonant sound
When a word ends in a consonant sound and the next word begins with the same or a very similar sound, we often link the words together and only make the consonant sound once. This happens when a verb ends in /t/ or /d/ before *to*, so *want to* is pronounced /ˈwɑntə/ and *decided to* is pronounced /dɪˈsaɪdətə/.

b 3 27 Listen and write six sentences. Then practice saying them.

c Work in pairs. **A** ask **B** the first six questions. **B** give as much information as you can. Change roles for the last six questions.

- Have you ever offered to look after somebody's dog (or other pet)?
- Do you think it is difficult to stay friends with an ex-boyfriend/girlfriend?
- Have you ever tried to learn something new and failed?
- Do you think it is important to learn to cook at school?
- How long do you usually spend deciding what to wear in the morning?
- Do you know how to change a tire on a car?

- Do you think it's possible to learn a foreign language studying on your own at home?
- Are you planning to go anywhere next weekend?
- Would you like to work or study in another country?
- Have you ever pretended to be sick (when you weren't)?
- Have you ever forgotten to turn off your cell phone during a class or concert?
- What do you think is the most interesting thing to do for a visitor to your town?

d ➤ **Communication** *How to...* **A** *p.103* **B** *p.107.* Read and retell two more *How to...* articles.

5 WRITING

With a partner, write a "How to..." article. Choose one of the titles below and try to think of at least four tips.

How to...

- make a good impression on your first day in your English class.
- make a good impression at a job interview.

G uses of the gerund (verb + *-ing*)
V verbs + gerund
P the letter *i*

What's your idea of happiness?

Making soup.

7B Being happy

1 GRAMMAR uses of the gerund

a Talk to a partner. Is there a book, a movie, or a song that makes you feel happy whenever you read, watch, or listen to it? What is it? Why does it make you feel happy?

b Read a magazine article where different people on the magazine's staff say what happiness is for them. Who do you think said what? Match the people to the paragraphs.

A
Tasha, *fashion editor*

B
Regina, *health editor*

C
Sebastian, *music editor*

D
Kate, *movie editor*

E
Marco, *food editor*

F
Andrew, *travel editor*

c Read the article again. Is there anybody you really agree/don't agree with? Compare with a partner.

d Look at the highlighted phrases in the first paragraph. Find an example of a gerund (verb + *-ing*):

1 after another verb _____
2 after a preposition _____
3 used as a noun _____

e ➤ **p.138 Grammar Bank 7B.** Learn more about the uses of the gerund and practice them.

f Write your own continuation for *Happiness is…*

g Work in groups of four. Read the other students' texts. Do you agree with their ideas of happiness?

Happiness is…

1 ☐ …making soup. I love using leftovers in the fridge. There's something magical about making something delicious out of nothing.

2 ☐ …sitting on the sofa on a winter evening with a box of chocolates, watching a feel-good movie, preferably one that makes me cry.

3 ☐ …listening to *Don't Stop Me Now* by Queen. As soon as I hear it, I immediately feel like getting up and dancing.

4 ☐ …getting on the scale- and seeing that I've lost a pound even though I had a big meal the day before.

5 ☐ …seeing my suitcase come out first at baggage-claim at the airport.

6 ☐ …finding a real bargain on sale. I'm still wearing a Prada jacket that I bought incredibly cheaply at a sale ten years ago.

2 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
verbs + gerund

a ➤ **p.158 Vocabulary Bank** *Verb forms.* Do part 2 (Verbs + gerund).

b Choose five things to talk about from the list below.

Something...
- you **don't mind doing** around the house
- you **like doing** with your family
- you **love doing** in the summer
- you **don't feel like doing** on weekends
- you **spend too much time doing**
- you **dream of doing**
- you **hate doing** at work / school
- you **don't like doing** alone
- you are **thinking of doing** this weekend
- you think you are **very good (or very bad) at doing**

c Work in pairs. **A** tell **B** about the five things. Say why. **B** ask for more information. Then change roles.

3 PRONUNCIATION the letter *i*

a Put the one-syllable words below into the right column.

find give high kind like milk
mind miss night right sit skin
thin time which win with

fish		bike	

b 30 Listen and check. Then look at the words in each column. What rules can you see for the pronunciation of...
- *i* + consonant + *e* (but which word is an exception?)
- *ind* and *igh*
- *i* between other consonants

c 31 Listen and check. Practice saying the sentences.

I miss spending time with my sister.
I like drinking a glass of milk at night.

4 SPEAKING & LISTENING

a Ask and answer with a partner.

1 When you are happy do you sometimes feel like singing?
2 Do you ever sing...?
- in the shower
- karaoke
- in the car
- in a choir or band
- while you're listening to music, e.g., on an iPod

3 Is there a particular singer whose songs you like singing? Do you have a favorite song?

b In pairs, say if you think sentences 1–7 are **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Singing is good for your health.
2 If you want to sing well, you need to learn to breathe correctly.
3 People who sing are usually heavier than people who don't.
4 Not everybody can learn to sing.
5 You need to know how to read music to be able to sing well.
6 If you make a surprised face, you can sing high notes better.
7 It takes years to learn to sing better.

c 32 Now listen to an interview with the director of a singing school and a student who took a class there. Were you right?

d Listen again. Choose the right answer.

1 When you are learning to sing, you need to ____ correctly.
a stand b dress c eat
2 Singing well is 95% ____.
a repeating b listening c breathing
3 Molly's class lasted ____.
a one day b one week c one month
4 Molly has always ____.
a been good at singing b been in a choir c liked singing
5 At first, the students learned to ____.
a breathe and sing b listen and breathe c listen and sing
6 At the end of the day, they could sing ____.
a perfectly b much better c a little better

e Would you like to learn to sing (better)? Are there any tips from the listening that you could use?

5 33 SONG *Don't Stop Me Now* ♫

G *have to, don't have to, must, must not, can't*
V modifiers: *a little (bit), really,* etc.
P sentence stress

You have to come to all the classes.

You don't have to take an exam.

7C Learn a language in a month!

1 GRAMMAR *have to, don't have to, must, must not, can't*

a Match the signs to the rules.

1 ☐ You have to pay before the end of the month.
2 ☐ You don't have to pay to see this.
3 ☐ You must not eat here.
4 ☐ You must turn off your cell phone before you come in.
5 ☐ You can't talk here.

b Look at the highlighted expressions and answer the questions.

1 Which two phrases mean...?
It is a rule. There's an obligation to do this.
You have to _____

2 Which phrase means...?
It isn't obligatory or it isn't necessary.
_____

3 Which two phrases mean...?
It isn't permitted. It is against the rules.
_____ _____

c ➤ p.138 Grammar Bank 7C. Learn more about *have to, don't have to, must, must not,* and *can't* and practice them.

d With a partner, complete four sentences about the school where you are learning English.

We have to... We don't have to...
We must... We must not... We can't...

e Compare your rules with another pair. Which rule do you think is the most important?

2 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a 3.36 Listen and write the five sentences.

b Listen again and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

3 READING & LISTENING

a Do you think people from your country are good at learning languages? Why (not)? Are American people good at learning your language?

b Read about Max, an American journalist who took an intensive Spanish course. Then cover the article and answer the questions.

1 What reputation do Americans have?
2 What experiment did Max's newspaper want to do?
3 Why did Max choose to learn Spanish?
4 Where did he take the course? How long was it?
5 What did he find easy and difficult about Spanish?
6 What were the four tests? What were the rules?

c 3.37 Which test do you think was the easiest for Max? Which do you think was the most difficult? Listen to Max taking the tests in Puerto Rico and check your answers.

d Listen again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Correct the false information.

1 The waiter didn't understand Max.
2 The bill was six dollars.
3 The drugstore was on the first street on the right.
4 The driver understood the name of the fort.
5 Max made a grammar mistake when he left the voicemail message.
6 Max's final score was eight.
7 Max says you can learn Spanish in a month.

I will survive (in Spanish)... or will I?

Americans have a reputation for being bad at learning languages, but is it really true? I work for a newspaper that was doing a series of articles about this. As an experiment, they asked me to try and learn a completely new language for one month. Then I had to go to the country and take some "tests" to see if I could "survive" in different situations. I decided to study Spanish because I would like to visit Puerto Rico and other places in Latin America in the future. If I go, I don't want to be the typical American who expects everyone else to speak English.

I took a one-month intensive course in Spanish at a language school in Washington, D.C. I was a complete beginner, but I soon found that some Spanish words are very similar to English ones. For example, *hola* isn't very different from "hello" and *inglés* is very similar to "English." But other things were more difficult, for example the verbs in Spanish change for each person, and that means you have to learn a lot of different endings. My biggest problem was the pronunciation. I found it very difficult to pronounce some letters in Spanish, especially *r* and *j*. I downloaded sentences in Spanish onto my smartphone, and I listened and repeated them again and again.

When my course ended, I went to San Juan, Puerto Rico for a long weekend to take my tests. A Spanish teacher named Nilda came with me and gave me a score out of 10 for each test and then a final score for everything.

These were the tests and the rules:

TESTS

You have to...

1. order a drink and a sandwich in a cafe, ask how much it is, and understand the price.
2. ask for directions on the street (and follow them).
3. take a taxi to a historical building in San Juan.
4. leave a message on somebody's voicemail.

RULES

- you can't use a dictionary or phrase book
- you can't speak English at any time
- you can't use your hands or mime or write anything down

4 VOCABULARY modifiers

My pronunciation of the fort wasn't **very** good.
I was feeling **a little** nervous at this point.

a Complete the chart with the words in the box.

a little (bit) extremely fairly not very really very

> ***a little (bit)***
> We only use *a little (bit)* before negative adjectives and adverbs, e.g., *a little (bit) difficult, a little (bit) slowly.*

b Complete the sentences with one of the words or phrases so that it makes a true sentence. Compare with a partner.

1. I'm _____ good at learning languages.
2. I'm _____ motivated to improve my English.
3. English pronunciation is _____ difficult.
4. English grammar is _____ complicated.
5. I'm _____ worried about the next English exam.
6. English is _____ important for my work / studies.

5 SPEAKING

a How well do you think you could do Max's four tests in English? Why?

I think I could order a drink and a sandwich fairly well...

b Talk to a partner.

HAVE YOU EVER...

- spoken to a tourist in English? When? Why?
- had to speak in English on the phone? Who to? What about?
- seen a movie or video clip in English? Which? Did it have subtitles? How much did you understand?
- read a book or magazine in English? Which one(s)?
- asked for directions in English in a foreign city? Where? What happened?
- used an app or website to improve your English? Which one?
- learned another foreign language? How well can you speak it?

6 WRITING

➤ **p.115 Writing** *A formal email.* Write an email asking for information.

Practical English At the pharmacy

EPISODE

1 VIDEO RUNNING IN CENTRAL PARK

a 3 38 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Are they enjoying their run?

b Watch or listen again and answer the questions.

1 How does Rob say he feels?
2 What does Jenny say about Central Park?
3 Is Rob happy he came to New York?
4 What is Rob tired of doing?
5 What does Jenny invite him to do?
6 How many more times are they going to run around the park?

2 VOCABULARY feeling sick

a Match the phrases and pictures.

What's the matter?

- ☐ I have a headache. /ˈhedeɪk/
- ☐ I have a cough. /kɔf/
- ☐ I have the flu. /flu/
- ☐ I have a temperature. /ˈtemprə
- ☐ I have a stomachache. /ˈstʌmək
- ☐ I have a cold. /koʊld/

b 3 39 Listen and check. Cover the phrases and practice with a partner.

What's the matter? *I have a headache.*

3 VIDEO GOING TO A PHARMACY

a 3 40 Cover the dialogue and watch or listen. Circle the corr answer.

1 Rob thinks he has *a cold | the flu.*
2 The pharmacist gives Rob *ibuprofen | penicillin.*
3 He has to take the medicine every *four hours | eight hours.*
4 They cost *$16.99 | $6.99.*

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Good morning. Can I help you?	I'm not feeling very well. I think I have flu.
What are your symptoms?	I have a headache and a cough.
Do you have a _____?	No, I don't think so.
Are you allergic to any drugs?	I'm allergic to penicillin.
No _____. This is ibuprofen. It'll make you feel _____.	How many do I have to take?
_____ every four hours.	Sorry? How often?
_____ every four hours. If you don't feel better in _____ hours, you should see a doctor.	OK, thanks. How much is that?
That's $6.99, please.	Thank you.
You're _____.	

American and British English

pharmacy = American English (and sometimes British English)
chemist's = British English
drugs = *medicine* in American English
drugs = *illegal substances* in British and American English
the flu = American English
flu = British English

c 3.41 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practice the dialogue with a partner.

e In pairs, role-play the dialogue.

A (book closed) You don't feel very well. Decide what symptoms you have. Are you allergic to anything?

B (book open) You are the pharmacist. You begin with *Can I help you?*

f Change roles.

4 VIDEO DINNER AT JENNY'S APARTMENT

a 3.42 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Rob broke up with his girlfriend a year before he met Jenny.
2 Jenny hasn't had much time for relationships.
3 Jenny knew that Rob wasn't feeling well in the morning.
4 Rob wants to go back to his hotel because he's tired.
5 Jenny is going to call a taxi.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c 3.43 Read the information box about *have got*. Listen and repeat the phrases.

have got

In British English, *have got* is sometimes used instead of *have* to talk about possession.

I've got a busy day tomorrow.

Have you got any children? *Yes, I have. I've got a girl and a boy.*
No, I haven't. I haven't got any children.

➤ See **appendix** *p.165.*

d Ask and answer with a partner. Use *Have you got...? Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.* Give more information if you can.

A any pets a bike or motorcycle a yard
B any brothers and sisters a car a laptop

Have you got any pets? *Yes, I have. I've got two dogs.*

e Look at the **Social English phrases**. Can you remember any of the missing words?

Social English phrases

Rob That was a lovely _____.
Rob That isn't very _____ for you.
Rob I'm _____ I'll be fine.
Rob I think I _____ get back to the hotel now.
Jenny I'm _____ you're feeling better.
Rob Thanks again for a _____ evening.
Jenny _____ time.

f 3.45 Watch or listen and complete the phrases.

g Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

Can you...?

- ☐ describe symptoms when you feel sick
- ☐ get medicine at a pharmacy
- ☐ talk about possessions with *have got*

G *should*
V *get*
P /ʊ/ and /u/, sentence stress

What should I do?

You should talk to her.

8A I don't know what to do!

1 READING

a Talk to a partner.

1 If you have a problem that you need to talk about, do you talk to a friend or to a member of your family? Why?

2 Do you think that men find it more difficult than women to talk about their problems? Why (not)?

b Read three problems from a weekly article in a newspaper. Match two pieces of advice to each problem.

c Read the problems and advice again. Look the highlighted verb phrases and guess thei meaning.

d Talk to a partner. Which piece of advice do you agree with most for each problem? Do you have any other suggestions?

Too macho to talk?

Are you a man who finds it difficult to talk about feelings and problems with your friends and family?
Send us your problem, and you will get advice from our readers.

Problem A

Three weeks ago, I asked my girlfriend to marry me – we have been together for 18 months. It was an impulse, but now I am having second thoughts. I am deeply in love with her, but is this too soon? Please help.

Problem B

My wife is running her first marathon in Orlando, Florida, and she really wants me to go and watch her. However, there is a business conference in New York the same weekend, and my boss would like me to attend. What should I do?

Problem C

My wife wants us to spend two weeks in Cape Cod, Massachusetts in the summer with her family, but I find her father really difficult to get along with. Should I go and risk having arguments all the time or should I suggest separate vacations this year?

Our readers' advice!

1 ☐ *This seems like an easy one – go, but try to avoid him where possible, and if you can't avoid him, then just smile and don't get into a conversation.*

2 ☐ *In my opinion, I don't think it's worth making problems at work. Why don't you suggest that she asks a girlfriend or a family member to go with her instead?*

3 ☐ *You should tell your wife how you feel. Be polite and, above all, b honest. You do not have to like her father. If he really is difficult, everyone else will already know.*

4 ☐ *You felt it was right at the time, but for some reason now you are not sure. You clearly love this girl, and I think you should go for it. I got married after four months of dating, and we celebrated 30 years together this year.*

5 ☐ *You should be there. Maybe this is a once-in-a-lifetime moment fo her. You can always keep in touch with co-workers on your phone*

6 ☐ *You shouldn't do anything in a hurry. Set a date 18 months from now which will give you time to be sure you're doing the right thing. And don't plan too much. If you start booking restaurants and getting clothes for the big day, it will make things worse if you then change your mind.*

Adapted from a newspap

2 GRAMMAR *should*

a Find and underline seven examples of *should* / *shouldn't* in the problems and advice in **1**. Answer with a partner:

1 What do we use *should* for?
2 How do you make negatives and questions with *should*?

b ➤ **p.140 Grammar Bank 8A.** Learn more about *should* and practice it.

3 PRONUNCIATION

/ʊ/ and /u/, sentence stress

a 3 47 Listen and repeat the words and sounds. What's the difference between the two sounds?

ʊ	bull	good put should would
u	boot	do soon true you

b 3 48 Are the pink letters in these words sound 1 (/ʊ/) or sound 2 (/u/)? Listen and check. Which consonant isn't pronounced in *should*, *would*, and *could*?

book could flew food foot look school

c 3 49 Listen and write six sentences.

d Listen again and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

e ➤ **Communication** *What should I do?* **A** *p.103* **B** *p.108*. Listen to your partner's problems and give advice.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 3 50 Listen to someone calling a radio program called *What's the Problem?* What is the problem about? Make notes in the chart.

	problem	expert's advice
caller 1		
caller 2		

b Compare your notes with a partner. What do *you* think the man should do?

c 3 51 Now listen to an expert giving advice and make notes in the chart. Is it the same as yours? Is it good advice? Why (not)?

d 3 52, 53 Now repeat for caller 2.

5 VOCABULARY *get*

a Look at three sentences from the lesson. Match the examples of *get* with meanings a–c.

a buy / obtain **b** receive **c** become

1 ☐ Send us your problem, and you will **get** advice…
2 ☐ If you start booking restaurants and **getting** clothes for the big day…
3 ☐ I'm **getting** really stressed about it.

b ➤ **p.159 Vocabulary Bank** *get*.

c In pairs, ask and answer the questions with *get*.

1 When was the last time you **got a present**? What was it? Who was it from?
2 Would you like to **get in shape**? What do you think you should do?
3 What website do you use if you want to **get tickets** a) to travel b) for the movies / theater / concerts?
4 Who do you **get along with** best in your family? Is there anybody you don't get along with?
5 How do you **get to work** / **school**? How long does it usually take you?
6 What's the first thing you do when you **get home** from work / school?
7 Do you have a good sense of direction, or do you often **get lost**?
8 How many **emails** or **text messages** do you **get** a day? Are they mostly from friends? Do you usually reply immediately?

6 WRITING

a Read two problems on a website. Write a response to one of them giving advice.

Goodadvice.com

Post your problems here, and you'll get advice from all over the world.

My best friend wants to borrow some money to help her buy a car. I have the money, and she says she'll pay me back next year. But I'm worried that it's not a good idea to lend money to friends. What should I do?

My friend Anna has gone away on vacation for two weeks, and I'm taking care of her cat. Yesterday I couldn't find the cat anywhere. My friend is coming home in three days. I'm desperate. Should I call her now and tell her? What should I do?

Language for giving advice

(I think / don't think) you should… Why don't you…?
You shouldn't… You could…

b In groups of four, read your responses. Whose advice is the best?

7 3 55 SONG *Why Do I Feel So Sad?* ♫

G *if* + present, *will* + base form (first conditional)
V confusing verbs
P linking

8B If something can go wrong,...

1 READING

a If you are waiting to check in at the airport and you change lines, what will usually happen?

b Read the first two paragraphs of the article and check. Who was Murphy? What is his law?

c Now look at the eight examples of Murphy's Law in the article and match them with sentences A–H.

A your flight will be delayed.
B you will spill coffee on it.
C you will find a parking space right in front of it.
D all the traffic lights will be red.
E will have a problem with his or her credit card.
F he or she will already have a partner.
G there will be a hyperactive five-year-old in the seat behind you.
H it will work when the salesperson tries it.

d Do any of these things or things like this often happen to you?

2 GRAMMAR *if* + present, *will* + base form

a In pairs, cover A–H and look at 1–8 in the text. How many of the laws can you remember?

b Look at the sentences again. What tense is the verb after *if*? What tense is the other verb?

c ➤ **p.140 Grammar Bank 8B.** Learn more about the first conditional and practice it.

d In pairs, complete these Murphy's Laws.

1 If you find something in a store that you really like,...
2 If you stop waiting for a bus and start walking,...
3 If you call a telephone company help line,...
4 If you leave your cell phone at home,...
5 If you lose a glove and buy a new pair,...

e Compare your laws with other students. Do you have the same (or similar)?

IT ALWAYS HAPPENS!

If you are in a check-in line and you change to another line that is moving more quickly, what will happen? The line you were in before will suddenly start moving faster. What will happen if you take your umbrella because you think it's going to rain later? It won't rain, of course. It will only rain if you forget to take your umbrella. These are examples of Murphy's Law, which says, "If there is something that can go wrong, it will go wrong."

Murphy's Law took its name from Captain Edward Murphy, an American aerospace engineer from the 1940s. He was trying to improve safety for pilots flying military planes. Not surprisingly, he got a reputation for always thinking of the worst thing that could happen in every situation. Here are some more examples of Murphy's Law.

AIR TRAVEL

1 ☐ If you get to the airport early,...
2 ☐ If you want to sleep on the plane,...

SHOPPING

3 ☐ If you are in a hurry, the person in front of you...
4 ☐ If you take something that doesn't work back to a store,...

DRIVING

5 ☐ If you're late for something important,...
6 ☐ If you park a long way from a restaurant,...

SOCIAL LIFE

7 ☐ If you are single and you meet somebody at a party who you really like,...
8 ☐ If you wear a new white shirt or dress,...

3 PRONUNCIATION linking

Sound linking
Remember that if a word finishes with a consonant and the next word begins with a vowel, we usually link the words together, e.g., we'll‿eat‿in‿a cafe

a 4.3 Listen and repeat the sentences. Try to link the marked words.

1 If‿I see her‿I'll tell her.
2 We'll go if‿it doesn't rain.
3 If‿I get there‿early, I'll‿order the food.
4 They'll‿arrive‿at‿eight‿if their flight's‿on time.
5 If you aren't‿in‿a hurry, we can walk.

b 4.4 Listen and write five more sentences.

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
confusing verbs

a What's the difference between *know* and *meet*, and *wear* and *carry*?

b ➤ **p.160 Vocabulary Bank** *Confusing verbs.*

c Circle the right verb. Then ask and answer with a partner.

1 Who do you *look* / *look like* in your family?
2 How many classes have you *missed* / *lost* this year?
3 What gadgets do you always *bring* / *take* with you when you go on vacation?
4 Do you think sports people *win* / *earn* too much money?
5 What is the best way to *know* / *meet* new friends?
6 Is it sometimes OK to *say* / *tell* a lie?

5 LISTENING

a With a partner, think of three things that could go wrong when you are on vacation.

b Match the words to their definitions.

1 [E] a monsoon /mɑnˈsun/
2 [ ] an earthquake /ˈərθkweɪk/
3 [ ] a tsunami /tsuˈnɑmi/
4 [ ] a cyclone /ˈsaɪkloʊn/
5 [ ] a blizzard /ˈblɪzərd/
6 [ ] a flood /flʌd/
7 [ ] a forest fire /ˈfɔrəst faɪər/

A a very bad storm with snow and strong winds
B a very strong wind that moves in a circle
C a big fire that can destroy many trees and houses
D a very large wave in the ocean
E when it rains very heavily for three months or more
F when there is too much water in a river and it comes onto the streets or yards
G when the ground suddenly shakes very strongly

c 4.6 Listen to what happened to Mr. and Mrs. Svanström. Mark their route on the map. What natural disaster happened in each place?

d Listen again and answer the questions.

1 How long did they have to wait at Munich airport?
2 What weather were they expecting in Bali?
3 Where were the streets full of smoke?
4 Where did they sleep in Cairns?
5 Why did they fly to Auckland and not to Christchurch in New Zealand?
6 What were they doing when the Japanese earthquake struck?
7 Where did they go for the last part of their vacation? Did anything happen to them there?

e Do you think they were lucky or unlucky? Why?

G possessive pronouns
V adverbs of manner
P sentence rhythm

You must be mine.

Yes. I'll be yours.

8C You must be mine

Girl

BY O. HENRY

PART 1

"I've found where she lives," said the detective quietly. "Here is the address."

Hartley took the piece of paper. On it were the words "Vivienne Arlington, No. 341 East 49th Street."

5 "She moved there a week ago," said the detective. "I can follow her if you want. It will only cost you $7 a day and expenses..."

"No, thank you," interrupted Hartley. "I only wanted the address. How much is it?"

10 "One day's work," said the detective. "Ten dollars."

Hartley paid the man. Then he left the office and took a tram to Broadway. After walking a short distance he arrived at the building that he was looking for. Hartley rang the bell. The door opened.

15 He went in and began to climb the stairs.

On the fourth floor he saw her standing in an open door. Vivienne was about twenty-one. Her hair was red gold, and her eyes were sea-blue. She was wearing a white top and a dark skirt.

20 "Vivienne," said Hartley, "you didn't answer my last letter. It took me a week to find your new address! Why didn't you answer me? You knew I was waiting to see you and hear from you."

1%

1 READING

a You are going to read and listen to a short story. First look at the picture and answer the questions.

1 What do the people look like? What are they wearing?
2 Where are they?
3 In what century do you think the story takes place?

b 47 Read and listen to Part 1. Then answer the questions with a partner.

1 What did the detective give Hartley? What did he offer to do?
2 What did Hartley do when he got the address?
3 What did Vivienne look like?
4 Why was Hartley angry with her?
5 Why do you think she didn't answer his letter?

c Look at the following words and phrases in the story. With a partner, guess what they mean.

moved (line 5) expenses (line 7) tram (line 12)
rang the bell (line 14) climb (line 15)

d 48 Read and listen to Part 2. Then answer the questions with a partner.

1 Why wasn't Vivienne sure about accepting Hartley's offer?
2 How did Hartley try to persuade her?
3 Where did Hartley and Vivienne first meet?
4 What did Hartley think was the reason why Vivienne didn't say yes to his offer?
5 What do you think Hartley wanted Vivienne to do?
6 Who do you think Héloise is?

Adverbs of manner
We often use adverbs of manner in writing to show how the characters are feeling, behaving, or speaking.

e Look at the highlighted adverbs. With a partner, guess what they mean.

PART 2

The girl looked out the window dreamily.

"Mr. Hartley," she said slowly, "I don't know what to say to you. I understand all the advantages of your offer, and sometimes I feel sure that I could be happy with you. But, then sometimes I am less sure. I was born a city girl, and I am not sure that I would enjoy living a quiet life in the suburbs."

"My dear girl," said Hartley, "You will have everything that you want. You can come to the city for the theater, for shopping, and to visit your friends as often as you want. You can trust me, can't you?"

"I can trust you completely," she said, smiling at him. "I know you are the kindest of men, and that the girl who you get will be very lucky. I heard all about you when I was at the Montgomerys'."

"Ah!" exclaimed Hartley, "I remember so well the evening I first saw you at the Montgomerys'. I will never forget that dinner. Come on, Vivienne, promise me. I want you. Nobody else will ever give you such a happy home."

Vivienne didn't answer. Suddenly Hartley was suspicious. "Tell me, Vivienne," he asked, "is there – is there someone else?"

"You shouldn't ask that, Mr. Hartley," she said. "But I will tell you. There is one other person – but I haven't promised him anything."

"Vivienne," said Hartley, masterfully. "You must be mine."

Vivienne looked him in the eye.

"Do you think for one moment," she said calmly, "that I could come to your home while Héloise is there?"

Glossary
advantage *n* a positive thing
suburbs *n* an area where people live outside the center of the city
trust *v* believe that somebody is good, honest, etc.
suspicious *adj* feeling that somebody has done something wrong

2 PRONUNCIATION sentence rhythm

a 4 9 Listen to the last five lines of Part 2. What tells the speakers...?

a where to pause
b in what way to say the dialogue

Reading aloud
Reading stories or poems aloud gives you the opportunity to focus on pronunciation, especially sentence rhythm.

b ➤ **Communication** *Reading dialogue p.104.* Practice reading the dialogue with a partner.

3 LISTENING

a 4 10 Listen to Part 3 of the story. Answer the questions.

1 What did Hartley say about Héloise?
2 What did Vivienne promise to do?
3 Who do you think the lady in the white dress is?

b 4 11 Listen to Part 4 of the story.

1 Who was the lady?
2 Who was Vivienne?
3 Who was Héloise?

c Did the ending surprise you? Why (not)?

4 GRAMMAR possessive pronouns

a Look at some extracts from the story. Complete them with *my, mine, your,* or *yours.*

1 "Vivienne, you didn't answer ____ last letter."
2 "I understand all the advantages of ____ offer."
3 "Vivienne ... you must be ____."
4 "My answer is yes. I will be ____."

b ➤ **p.140 Grammar Bank 8C.** Learn more about possessive pronouns and practice them.

c 4 13 Listen. Say the sentences with a possessive pronoun.

It's my book. *It's mine.*

5 WRITING using adverbs

a Make adverbs from the following adjectives.

angry lazy quiet sad serious slow

b 4 14 Listen to some lines from stories. Add an adverb from **a** after "said" to show how the person is speaking.

1 "I'm sorry, but I don't love you," he said ____.
2 "Give me back all my letters," she said ____.
3 "I think... I have an idea," he said ____.
4 "Don't make a noise. Everyone is asleep," she said ____.
5 "I don't feel like doing anything," he said ____.
6 "This is a very important matter," she said ____.

c In pairs, write a short scene between Hartley's wife and Héloise, when she is telling the cook to leave. Include at least two adverbs of manner after *said*.

7&8 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 I need _____ some emails.
a to answer b answer c answering

2 The situation is difficult _____.
a for explain b explain c to explain

3 I don't know what _____.
a do b to do c that I do

4 I don't really mind _____ housework.
a do b to do c doing

5 _____ is one of the best forms of exercise.
a Swiming b Swimming c Swim

6 _____ bring our books tomorrow?
a Do we have to
b Have we to
c Do we must

7 It's free. You _____ pay.
a don't have to b must not c haven't to

8 You must _____ your grandmother.
a to call b calling c call

9 You _____ drink so much coffee.
a not should b don't should c shouldn't

10 I think you should _____ to her about it.
a to talk b talk c talking

11 If she _____, she won't come back.
a goes b went c 'll go

12 If they don't come soon, we _____ them.
a don't see b won't see c aren't see

13 Call me if you _____ a taxi.
a won't find b don't find c didn't find

14 **A** Whose book is that? **B** It's _____.
a my b mine book c mine

15 She forgot his birthday, but he didn't forget _____.
a her b she c hers

VOCABULARY

a Circle the right verb.

1 When did you *know* / *meet* your husband?
2 Did you *tell* / *say* Mark about the party?
3 If we don't run, we'll *miss* / *lose* the train!
4 I really *wait* / *hope* she's passed the exam.
5 My mother always *carries* / *wears* a lot of jewelry.

b Complete with a verb from the list.

enjoy finish forget hate learn mind promise try

1 Don't _____ to turn off the light before you go.
2 I want to _____ to speak Chinese.
3 Can you _____ to make less noise, please?
4 I _____ to pay you back next week.
5 I really _____ making cakes.
6 Do you _____ waiting here until I'm ready?
7 My parents are very punctual – they _____ being late.
8 When are you going to _____ using the computer? I need it!

c Complete the modifiers.

1 **A** How are you? **B** **V**_____ well, thanks. And you?
2 I was **ex**_____ lucky. I won $100.
3 She's a **l**_____ tired. She needs to rest.
4 You're driving **r**_____ fast! Slow down!
5 It's **f**_____ cold outside. You should wear a jacket.

d Complete the *get* phrases.

1 We didn't have a GPS in the car, and we **got** _____ on the way home from Boston.
2 I'm always really hungry when I **get** _____ from school.
3 She was very sick, but luckily she's **getting** _____.
4 We **got** two _____ for the theater to see a show.
5 I **get** _____ very well with my brothers and sisters.
6 They were married for ten years, but six months ago they **got** _____.
7 I **got** a text _____ from Carol. She says she's going to be late.

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1	mine	find	right	give
2	win	fit	child	thin
3	choose	could	would	look
4	should	impression	dictionary	sandwich
5	earn	wear	learn	heard

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 pre|tend
2 im|por|tant
3 re|mem|ber
4 sa|la|ry
5 qui|et|ly

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article once. What does Michael think is the main reason Americans aren't good at speaking languages?

b Read the article again and check the reasons why, according to the writer, some Americans are bad at languages.

1 ☐ Americans rarely travel abroad.
2 ☐ English is an international language.
3 ☐ Americans who live abroad often find the local language too difficult to learn.
4 ☐ Americans who live abroad often don't socialize with the local people.
5 ☐ Language teachers in American schools are not very good.
6 ☐ Many American middle schools don't have foreign-language teachers.
7 ☐ American children don't know enough about their own grammar.
8 ☐ Americans don't want to waste money learning languages.

c Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text. Guess their meaning from the context. Check with your teacher or with a dictionary.

Why are some Americans so bad at learning languages?

Michael Reece has lived and worked in France for fifteen years.

Some Americans are bad at speaking foreign languages. It's a fact. In any city around the world, you can find American tourists asking for the restaurant menu in English. At best, they will try to say a couple of phrases they have learned from a phrase book, but they will stop making an effort the moment they discover the waiter knows a little English.

I read a survey once that found that only 20 percent of Americans could speak a language other than English in their own homes. So why is this? I think laziness is possibly the key factor. There is a general feeling among Americans that "everyone speaks English nowadays, so it's not worth learning other languages." In multinational companies, English is often the official language of communication with the company. Also, Americans who live abroad can always find other American expatriates to talk to or to watch American TV with—all reasons for never bothering to learn the local language.

The situation in American schools doesn't help. In 1997, about 75 percent of American public middle schools offered foreign languages. Today, that number has gone down to 58 percent. And even the few students who study foreign languages at school don't have as many hours of classes as students in other countries. I think it is also a problem that American children don't study English grammar anymore, which makes it more difficult for them to learn the grammar of another language.

VIDEO CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

4.15 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Stacey Heba Ruth Ben James

1 Stacey thinks that happiness is having _____.
   a somewhere nice to live and a lot of friends
   b a lot of money and a close family
   c a reasonable amount of money and friends and family
2 Heba _____.
   a speaks a little Arabic and a little French
   b speaks Arabic and French very well
   c speaks Arabic well and a little French
3 If Ruth has relationship problems, she talks to _____.
   a her friends
   b her mother
   c her mother and her friends
4 Ben thinks people who have problems sleeping should _____.
   a drink less coffee and exercise more
   b do physical work before going to bed
   c drink less coffee and try to relax more
5 James thinks that Americans are bad at learning languages because _____.
   a they don't want to learn languages
   b they find learning languages too difficult
   c they aren't interested in traveling abroad

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ talk about something you would like to learn to do, and someone you think would be interesting to meet
2 ☐ talk about three things you like, love, and hate doing
3 ☐ talk about the rules in your (language) school using *must* and *have to*
4 ☐ give someone advice about learning English using *should* and *shouldn't*
5 ☐ remember three of Murphy's Laws in English
6 ☐ say two true sentences using *mine* and *yours*

VIDEO **Short movies** Learning a language
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G *if* + past, *would* + base form (second conditional)
V animals
P word stress

What would you do if you saw a bear?

I'd run away.

9A What would you do?

1 READING & SPEAKING

a Read the quiz questions and answers. Complete each question with an animal from the list.

bee bull dog jellyfish shark snake

b Look at the highlighted verbs and verb phrases. With a partner, try to guess their meaning from the context.

c Read the quiz again and circle your answers, a, b, or c.

d ➤ **Communication** *Would you know what to do?* **A** *p.104* **B** *p.108* **C** *p.110*. Read the answers to one section and tell the others. Did you all choose the right answers?

e Have you ever been in any of these situations? What did you do?

2 GRAMMAR

if + past, *would* + base form

a Look at questions 1–6 again. Are they about a past situation or an imagined future situation? What tense is the verb after *if*?

b ➤ **p.142 Grammar Bank 9A.** Learn more about the second conditional and practice it.

c Complete the sentences so that they are true for you. Compare with a partner.

1 If I had five extra hours every week,...
2 I would be very happy if...
3 If I could live anywhere in the world,...
4 I would learn English more quickly if...
5 If I won a lot of money in the lottery,...

3 VOCABULARY animals

a ➤ **p.161 Vocabulary Bank** *Animals.*

b 4 18 Listen. Which animals can you hear?

Would you know what to do?

We all love seeing animals on TV and in zoos. But some animals can be dangerous. If you met one in real life, would you know the right thing to do? Read about some common and some less common situations.

Would you know what to do?

In the city

1 What would you do...
... if a large aggressive _____ ran toward you?

a I would shout "down" at it several times.
b I would put my hands in my pockets and walk slowly backward.
c I would keep completely still and look at it in its eyes.

2 What would you do...
... if you were driving, and a _____ flew into the car?

a I would open all the windows and wait for it to fly out.
b I would try to kill it with a map or a newspaper.
c I would wave my hand to make it go out.

In the country

3 What would you do...

... if a poisonous _____ bit you on the leg, and you were more than 30 minutes from the nearest town?

a I would put something very cold on it, like a water bottle.

b I would suck the bite to get the poison out.

c I would tie something, e.g., a scarf on my leg above the bite.

4 What would you do...

... if you were in the middle of a field and a _____ started running toward you?

a I would run.

b I would throw something (e.g., a hat or a bag) in another direction.

c I would shout and wave my arms.

In the water

5 What would you do...

... if you were in the ocean and a _____ stung you?

a I would rub the sting with a towel to clean it.

b I would wash the sting with fresh water.

c I would wash the sting with vinegar or ocean water.

6 What would you do...

... if you were in the ocean near the shore and you saw a _____?

a I would swim to the shore as quickly and quietly as possible.

b I would float and pretend to be dead.

c I would shout for help.

4 PRONUNCIATION word stress

Stress in words that are similar in other languages
Some words in English, e.g., for animals, are similar to the same words in other languages, but the stress is often in a different place.

a Look at the animal words below. Can you remember which syllable is stressed? Underline it.

ca|mel cro|co|dile dol|phin e|le|phant
gi|raffe kan|ga|roo li|on mo|squi|to

b (4 19)) Listen and check. Are any of these words similar in your language? Is the stress in the same place?

c In pairs, ask and answer the questions.

1 What's the most dangerous animal in your country?
2 If you went on a safari, what animal would you most like to see?
3 What's your favorite movie about an animal?
4 What's your favorite cartoon animal?
5 Are there any animals or insects you are really afraid of?
6 Do you (or did you) have a pet? What?
7 Are you allergic to any animals or insects?
8 If you could be an animal, which animal would you like to be?

5 SPEAKING

Work in groups of three. Take turns choosing a question and ask the others in the group. Then answer it yourself.

What would you do...

... if you saw a **mouse** in your kitchen?
... if you saw somebody being attacked by a **dog**?
... if a **bird** or a **bat** flew into your bedroom?
... if you saw a large **spider** in the bathtub?
... if it was a very hot day and you were on a beach that was famous for **shark** attacks?
... if someone offered to buy you a fur coat?
... if your neighbor's **dog** barked all night?
... if a friend asked you to look after his or her **cat** or **dog** for the weekend?
... if you went to somebody's house for dinner and he or she gave you...?
a **horse** meat b **goat** c **kangaroo**

Talking about imaginary situations
I think I'd (probably)...
I (definitely) wouldn't...
I don't think I'd...

G present perfect + *for* and *since*
V phobias and words related to fear
P sentence stress

9B I've been afraid of it for years

Do you have any phobias?

Yes, I've been afraid of spiders since I was a child.

1 VOCABULARY
phobias and words related to fear

a Look at the picture. How many things can you see that some people have a phobia of?

b Look at the names of five phobias. Match them to explanations A–E.

1 acrophobia 3 glossophobia 5 arachnophobia
2 agoraphobia 4 claustrophobia

A ☐ People with this phobia are terrified of spiders. Rupert Grint, the actor who played Ron Weasley in the Harry Potter movies, has this phobia, and so does his character Ron.

B ☐ This phobia can have a severe effect on sufferers' lives. These people are frightened of being in open and public spaces like stores and busy streets. They often feel panic when they go out and only feel safe at home.

C ☐ People with this phobia are afraid of being in closed spaces like elevators or traveling on the subway. This phobia can make life very difficult for people who live and work in cities.

D ☐ People who suffer from this phobia are scared of heights, and they get very nervous if they have to go up high, for example on a ski lift or if they are on a balcony on the 20th floor.

E ☐ People with this phobia suffer from a fear of public speaking. They get very nervous if they have to speak in front of other people, for example at work or in class or at a conference. The actor Harrison Ford has been afraid of public speaking all his life. He even gets nervous when a character in a movie he is making has to make a speech.

c Read the explanations again. Find in the texts...

1 the noun made from the adjective *afraid* _____
2 one adjective that means *very afraid* _____
3 two synonyms for *afraid* _____, _____

2 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 4 20 Listen to three people talking about their phobias. Answer question 1 for each person.

	1	2	3
1 What is he / she afraid of?			
2 When did it start?			
3 How does it affect his / her life?			

b Listen again and answer questions 2 and 3 for each person. Which person do you think is most affected by his or her phobia?

c Ask and answer with a partner.

1 Which of the phobias in this lesson do you think is the most irrational?
2 Which do you think makes the sufferers' lives most complicated?
3 Do you or anyone you know have a phobia? When and how did it start? How does it affect your life or his/her life?

My brother is really afraid of flying. He gets very nervous before he flies somewhere. It started about ten years ago when...

3 GRAMMAR present perfect + *for* and *since*

a Look at this extract from the first interview in **2**. Answer the questions.

"How long have you had this phobia?"
"I've had it for about 40 years. Since I was 12 years old."

1 When did she begin to be afraid of bats?
2 Is she afraid of bats now?
3 What tense do we use to talk about something that started in the past and is still true now?
4 Complete the rule with *for* or *since*.
Use _____ with a period of time.
Use _____ with a point in time.

b ➤ **p.142 Grammar Bank 9B.** Learn more about the present perfect + *for* and *since*, and practice it.

c 4 22 Listen and say the phrase with *for* or *since*.

1984 *since 1984*

4 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a 4 23 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

1 for ten years ⟶ worked here for ten years
⟶ I've worked here for ten years.
2 since 2002 ⟶ lived here since 2002
⟶ We've lived here since 2002.
3 known him ⟶ have you known him
⟶ How long have you known him?

b 4 24 Listen and write five sentences.

5 SPEAKING

a Look at the questions below. What two tenses are they? What are the missing words?

		Name
have	/ a pet? How long / it?	
	/ a bike ? How long / it?	
live	/ in a modern apartment? How long / there?	
	/ near this school ? How long / there?	
know	/ anybody from another country? How long / him (her)?	
be	/ a fan of a soccer team? How long / a fan?	
	/ a member of a club or organization? How long / a member?	
	/ married? How long / married?	

b Move around the class and ask other students. If they answer *Yes, I do* or *Yes, I am* to the first question, ask the second question. Try to find a different person for each question.

6 READING

a Do you know of any kinds of treatment for people who have phobias?

b Read the text and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Thirty percent of people have some kind of phobia.
2 Doctors have created a new drug to cure phobias.
3 In exposure therapy, people learn to relax when they are exposed to something they are afraid of.
4 Exposure therapy is always successful.
5 The drug affects the way people learn and remember things.
6 The study showed that the drug helped people to lose their fear.

Scared of spiders?
Take this pill.

There are many different kinds of phobias, and they affect at least a quarter of the population. But doctors believe that they may soon have a cure. They have discovered that a drug, which is given to patients suffering from tuberculosis, can also help people to overcome their phobias.

The normal treatment for people with strong phobias is some kind of exposure therapy. The most commonly used exposure therapy involves gradually exposing people to the object or situation that produces the fear. For example, if you have a dentist phobia, you might first sit in the waiting room of a dentist, then talk to the dentist, and then sit in the dentist's chair. These exposures are combined with relaxation techniques.

However, exposure therapy does not work for everybody, and doctors think that the new drug, which causes changes to a part of the brain that is used in learning and memory, could be used in the future to make this therapy more effective. Michael Davis at Emory University School of Medicine in Atlanta, Georgia did a study with 30 acrophobics – people who are scared of heights – and put them in a glass elevator that appeared to go up and down. The people who were given the pill felt much less afraid then those who took a placebo.

Adapted from a newspaper

c With a partner, guess the meaning of the highlighted words and phrases.

d What stages of exposure therapy do you think could be used for someone with
a) arachnophobia b) claustrophobia?

G present perfect or simple past? (2)
V biographies
P word stress, /ɔr/

9C Born to sing

He was born in Jamaica.

How many Grammy's has he won?

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION
biographies, word stress, /ɔr/

a (4.25) Look at the highlighted words in the list below. Which syllable is stressed? Listen and check.

Events in your life

- ☐ be born
- ☐ marry somebody / get married
- ☐ go to elementary school
- ☐ have children
- ☐ go to high school
- ☐ go to college
- ☐ graduate from college
- ☐ separate
- ☐ get a job
- ☐ graduate from high school
- ☐ get divorced
- ☐ retire
- ☐ fall in love
- ☐ die

b Number the expressions in what you think is the most logical order. Compare with a partner. Do you agree?

c (4.26) Listen and repeat the words and sound.

ɔr horse	born divorced four

d Practice saying these words. Circle the ones with the /ɔr/ sound.

more work world boring door worse
sports wear form near score word

e (4.27) Listen and check. What rule can you see for words with *wor* + consonant?

2 READING

a Look at the photos of Bob and Ziggy Marley and read the introduction. Have you heard their music? Do you like it?

b Read ten facts about the lives of the two men. In pairs, decide which five are about Bob Marley (**BM**) and which five are about Ziggy Marley (**ZM**).

c Work in pairs. **A** reread the facts about Bob Marley. **B** reread the ones about Ziggy Marley. Close your books and tell your partner what you can remember.

3 GRAMMAR present perfect or simple past? (2)

a Answer the questions.

1 Look at the five facts about Bob Marley. What tense are all the verbs? Why?

2 Look at the five facts about Ziggy Marley. What three tenses are there? Why?

b ➤ p.142 Grammar Bank 9C. Learn more about the difference between the present perfect and the simple past, and practice it.

Bob Marley (1945–1981) is often called the father of reggae because he did more than anybody to make this kind of music popular all over the world. His eldest son Ziggy (1968–) followed in his father's footsteps and is a very respected reggae musician.

1 ☐ He and three of his brothers and sisters formed a band called The Melody Makers, and they played at their father's funeral.

2 ☐ He had eleven children with several different women. However, he only married one of them, Rita Marley in 1966.

3 ☐ He has been a musician since he was ten, when his father bought him his first guitar.

4 ☐ He has lived in Miami for many years with his wife Orly, and they have three children.

5 ☐ He has won four Grammy awards for his music, including Best Reggae Album.

6 ☐ He injured his foot playing soccer, and he later became sick with cancer. He died four years later at the age of 36.

7		He was born in a small village in Jamaica. His father was a captain in the British army.
8		He was born in Kingston, Jamaica in 1968, and he was 13 years old when his father died. His father's last words to him were "Money can't buy you life."
9		His music was very influenced by social problems in his homeland, Jamaica.
10		With his band, The Wailers, he made eleven albums. His most famous songs included *No Woman, No Cry*, *Three Little Birds*, and *I Shot the Sheriff*.

4 LISTENING

a Look at the photos of another famous father and son, Julio and Enrique, who are both singers. What's their last name? Who do you think is more famous?

b You are going to listen to a radio program about Enrique. Look at the information. Before you listen, guess what the connection is to him.

I think he was born in Madrid in 1975.

c 4 29 Now listen and make notes. Compare with a partner.

d Do you think Ziggy and Enrique have been successful because of their last names, or because they are genuinely talented? Do you think it's common for children to want to do the same job as their parents?

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Think about an older person, a friend or a member of your family, who is alive and who you know well. Prepare to answer the questions below about his or her life and to tell your partner any other interesting information about him or her.

The past
- When / born?
- Where / born?
- What / do after (he / she) graduate school? (e.g., get a job, go to college, get married, have children, etc.)

The present
- Where / live now?
- How long / live there?
- What / do? (job) How long...?
- What / do in (his / her) free time?

- Do you think (he / she) has had a good life? Why (not)?

b Interview your partner about his / her person. Ask for more information. Do your two people have anything in common?

I'm going to tell you about my grandmother. *When was she born?*

c ➤ p.116 **Writing** *A biography.* Write a biography of a person you know or a famous person.

6 4 30 SONG *You're My #1* ♫

Practical English Getting around

EPISODE 5

1 VIDEO HOLLY AND ROB IN BROOKLYN

a 4 31 Watch or listen to Rob and Holly. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Rob has just done an interview.
2 He is in a hurry.
3 He has another interview in Manhattan.
4 He has another coffee.
5 Barbara calls Rob.
6 The restaurant is booked for 7 o'clock.

American and British English
restroom = American English; *toilet* = British English
the subway = American English; *the underground* = British English

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

2 VOCABULARY directions

a Look at the pictures and complete the phrases.

1 Turn _____.
2 Go _____ ahead.
3 Take the _____ turn on the right.
4 Turn right at the _____ lights.
5 Go around the _____ and take the third exit.

b 4 32 Listen and check.

American and British English
go straight ahead = American English; *go straight on* = British English

3 VIDEO ASKING HOW TO GET THERE

a 4 33 Cover the dialogue and watch or listen. Mark Rob's route on the map.

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Say	You Hear
How do I get to Greenwich Village on the subway?	Go to the subway station at Prospect Park. _____ the B train to West 4th Street.
How many stops is that?	Six or seven.
OK. And then?	From West 4th Street take the A train, and get _____ at 14th Street.
Could you say that again?	OK. From Prospect Park take the B train to West 4th Street, and then take the A train to 14th Street. That's only one _____.
Where's the restaurant?	Come out of the subway on Eighth Avenue, go _____ on for about 50 yards and take the _____ left. That's Greenwich Avenue. The restaurant's on the _____. It's called The Tea Set.
OK, thanks. See you later.	And don't get _____!

c 4.34 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practice the dialogue with a partner.

e In pairs, role-play the dialogue.

A B is at Prospect Park. Choose a destination on the subway map. Give B directions. You start with *Go to the subway station at....*

B Follow **A**'s directions, and tell **A** which subway stop you have arrived at. Were you right?

f Change roles.

Take the A train to... Then...

4 VIDEO ROB IS LATE...AGAIN

a 4.35 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Is the date a success?

b Watch or listen again and answer the questions.

1 What excuse does Rob give for being late?
2 How long has Jenny waited for him?
3 What does Rob suggest they do?
4 What does Jenny say that Rob could do?
5 Who is Rob interested in: Holly or Jenny?

c Look at the **Social English phrases**. Can you remember any of the missing words?

Social English phrases

Rob I'm so _____.
Rob I _____ I'm sorry.
Jenny I don't want to _____ here anymore.
Jenny I don't _____ like a walk.
Jenny It's been a _____ day.
Jenny I didn't _____ to say that.

d 4.36 Watch or listen and complete the phrases.

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

Can you...?

- ☐ give and understand directions on the street
- ☐ give and understand directions for using public transportation
- ☐ apologize

G passive
V verbs: *invent, discover*, etc.
P /ʃ/, *-ed*, sentence stress

I think it was invented by a woman.

Are you sure?

10A The mothers of invention

1 LISTENING

a Look at the photos. Five of these things were invented by women. In pairs, decide which five you think they are.

b 4 37 Now listen to a radio program about inventions. Were you right? Complete the sentences with the invention.

1 The _____ was invented by Josephine Cochrane in 1886.
2 _____ were invented by Mary Anderson in 1903.
3 _____ were invented by Marion Donovan in 1950.
4 _____ was invented by Bette Nesmith Graham in 1956.
5 The _____ was invented by Stephanie Kwolek in 1966.

c Listen again and answer the questions.

1 What happened after Josephine Cochrane's dinner parties?
2 What was the problem with cars in 1903 when it rained or snowed?
3 How many disposable diapers are used every day?
4 What was Bette Nesmith Graham's job?
5 What was special about the material Stephanie Kwolek invented?

d Which of the five inventions do you think was the best?

2 GRAMMAR passive

a Make five true sentences using the words in the chart.

The dishwasher	is called	white-out today.
Disposable diapers	was invented	by Marion Donovan.
More than 55 million diapers	are protected	every day.
Ms. Graham's invention	were invented	by the bullet-proof vest.
Police officers all over the world	are used	by an American woman.

The dishwasher was invented by an American woman.

b Look at the two sentences below and answer the questions.

a An American woman invented the dishwasher.
b The dishwasher was invented by an American woman.

1 Do the sentences have the same meaning?
2 In which sentence is the focus more on the dishwasher?
3 In which sentence is the focus more on the woman?

c ➤ **p.144 Grammar Bank 10A.** Learn more about the passive and practice it.

3 READING & VOCABULARY
verbs: *invent, discover,* etc.

a Match the verbs to the dictionary definitions.

base design discover invent

1 _____ *verb* to find or learn something for the first time, e.g., *DNA was ~ in 1953.*
2 _____ *verb* to make something using something else as a starting point, e.g., *This movie is ~ on a true story.*
3 _____ *verb* to draw a plan that shows how to make something, e.g., *The building was ~ by a Brazilian architect.*
4 _____ *verb* to make or think of something for the first time, e.g., *Who ~ the bicycle?*

b Complete the "Did you know...?" text with the past participle of a verb from the list.

base call design discover give
invent open play show use

c Read the text again. One of the pieces of information is not true. Which one do you think it is?

4 PRONUNCIATION /ʃ/, -*ed*, sentence stress

a 4 39 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

shower	dishwasher invention special washing machine

b What four ways can you see for spelling the /ʃ/ sound? Which one do you think is not typical? Go to the **Sound Bank** *p.167* and check.

c How is *-ed* pronounced in these past participles? Put them in the right column.

based called cre|a|ted de|signed di|rec|ted
dis|cov|ered in|ven|ted pain|ted pro|duced used

d dog	t tie	/ɪd/

d 4 40 Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable in each multi-syllable verb.

e 4 41 Listen and write six sentences. Then listen again and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

5 SPEAKING

➤ **Communication** *Passives quiz* **A** *p.105* **B** *p.109.* Make sentences for your partner to decide if they are true or false.

Did you know...?

One of the most famous logos in the world is the **Nike** logo. It was [1]_____ by an American student, Carolyn Davidson, in 1971. Ms. Davidson was only paid $35 for her design. However, she was later [2]_____ a gold ring in the shape of the logo and Nike shares.

Canned food was [3]_____ in 1810 in Britain by Peter Durand. Unfortunately, he did not also invent a can opener, so cans were [4]_____ with difficulty using a knife and a hammer. It wasn't until almost 50 years later that the American Ezra Warner invented the can opener.

When people at toy company Parker Brothers were first [5]_____ the board game - **Monopoly**, they were not interested. They said it had 52 fundamental errors, including taking too long to play. However, a few days later, the company president saw the game and took it home to try it. He stayed up until 1 a.m. to finish playing it, and the next day he wrote to the inventor, Charles Darrow, and offered to buy it!

The modern game of **golf** was invented in Scotland in the 18th century. It was originally only [6]_____ by men, and was [7]_____ "golf" because of the rule **G**entlemen **O**nly **L**adies **F**orbidden. This is how the word *golf* entered into the English language.

Botox was first [8]_____ in the early 1980s to correct strabismus (lazy eye) in children. The possibility of using it to make people's faces look younger was only [9]_____ 20 years later.

The character Gregory House in the hit TV series **House, M.D.** is [10]_____ on Conan Doyle's detective Sherlock Holmes. Like Holmes, House uses his intelligence and knowledge of psychology to solve cases. House's relationship with his friend Dr. James Wilson is similar to that between Holmes and his friend, Dr. John Watson, and the address on his driving licence is 221B Baker St., a direct reference to Holmes's address.

G *used to*
V school subjects
P *used to / didn't use to*

Did you use to like elementary school?

Yes, I did. I used to have a great time.

10B Could do better

1 VOCABULARY school subjects

a Read the report card and match the subjects and pictures.

Subject	Grade
art	65%
foreign languages (English, etc.)	72%
geography	86%
history	44%
IT (= information technology)	50%
literature	57%
math	42%
PE (=physical education)	78%
science (physics, chemistry, and biology)	61%

Behavior
Lazy and messy. Talks a lot in class.

b 4 42 Listen and check.

c Look at the report card again. What do *grades* and *behavior* mean?

d Did you have any other subjects in elementary or high school? Which subjects were you...?

a good at b OK at c bad at

I was really bad at math.

good at
We use **at** after *good* and *bad* to talk about our abilities, e.g., *I was really bad* **at** *math. I'm really good* **at** *cooking.*

2 GRAMMAR *used to*

a When you were at school, did you get a report card at the end of every quarter or year? Were they usually good or bad? Did you always show them to your parents?

b Read some extracts from *Could do Better*, a collection of famous people's school report cards. Are the comments positive or negative?

She must try to be less emotional ... with others.

Princess Diana
mother of Princes William and Harry

He may be somewhat eccentric.

George Bush
politician, US President 1988–1992

Most likely to succeed

Jack... can seldom locate his possessions.

John F. Kennedy
US President 1960–1963

c Read the extracts again and match the people to sentences 1–5. Write **GB**, **JL**, **PD**, **JK**, or **HF**.

1 ____ didn't use to be very organized.
2 ____ used to make the other children laugh.
3 ____ used to be a little strange.
4 ____ used to use very complicated vocabulary.
5 ____ used to cry a lot at school.

d Look at sentences 1–5 again. Does *used to* refer to...?

1 a the present
  b the past
2 a things that happened once
  b things that happened repeatedly

e ➤ **p.144 Grammar Bank 10B.** Learn more about *used to* and practice it.

He is... a clown in class and wastes other pupils' time.

John Lennon
musician, member of the Beatles 1960–69

Subject: *English*

Helen must learn not to use such flowery language.

Helen Fielding
author of *Bridget Jones's Diary*

3 PRONUNCIATION *used to / didn't use to*

Pronouncing *used to*
When we say *used to* or (*didn't*) *use to* we link the two words together. They are both pronounced /ˈyustə/.

a (4.44) Listen and underline the stressed words. Then listen and repeat.

1 He used to hate school.
2 I used to be good at French.
3 They didn't use to behave well.
4 She didn't use to wear glasses.
5 Did you use to walk to school?

b (4.45) Now listen and write six more sentences.

4 LISTENING

a (4.46) Listen to six people talking about their memories of school. Write ✓ if they liked it, ✗ if they didn't like it, and ✓✗ if they liked some things but not others.

1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐ 5 ☐ 6 ☐

b Listen again and answer the questions.

Who...?
☐ didn't like being at a same-sex school
☐ didn't use to study a lot, but got good grades
☐ had a very good physics teacher
☐ hated playing sports
☐ liked one school, but not another
☐ used to read a lot at school

c Do you identify with any of the speakers? Why?

5 SPEAKING

a Think about when you were in elementary or high school. Prepare your answers to the questions below. Think of examples you could give.

Did you use to...?

- be disorganized or very organized
- be late for school or on time
- get a lot of homework or a little
- have a teacher you really liked
- be a good or a bad student
- wear a uniform
- have a teacher you hated
- have a nickname

b Work in groups of three. **A** tell **B** and **C** about how you used to be. **B** and **C** listen and ask for more information. Then change roles. Did you have anything in common?

I used to be very disorganized, for example I often left my books or my gym clothes at home.

6 (4.47) SONG *ABC* ♫

G *might*
V word building: noun formation
P diphthongs

10C Mr. Indecisive

Are you going to the party?

I might go, but I might not.

1 GRAMMAR *might*

a Do you know anybody who is very indecisive? What is he / she indecisive about?

b 4 48 Cover the dialogue and listen. What does Adrian decide in the end?

c Listen again and complete the dialogue.

Tina Hi, Adrian.
Adrian Oh. Hi, Tina.
T It's Alice's party tonight. You are going, aren't you?
A I don't know. I'm not sure. I might _____, but I might not. I can't decide.
T Oh, come on. It'll be good. A lot of Alice's friends are going to be there. You might _____ _____.
A Yes, that's true... OK. I'll go then.
T Great. Should we take a taxi there?
A No, I'll take my car... No, wait. It might _____ _____ to park. Let's take a taxi.
T OK. What time should I get the taxi for? 9:30?
A Yes... No... Listen. I'll take my car. I'll pick you up at 9:00.
T Are you sure about that?
A Yes, I'm sure... I think.

d 4 49 Adrian calls Tina later. What happens?

e Underline the verb phrases in the dialogue with *might*. Do we use them for...?

1 an obligation OR 2 a possibility

f ➤ p.144 Grammar Bank 10C. Learn more about *might* and practice it.

g Take turns asking and answering the questions below. Use *I'm not sure. I might...* and give two possibilities each time.

What are you going to do after class? / *I'm not sure. I might go home or I might go shopping. What about you?*

1 What are you going to do after class?
2 What are you going to have for dinner tonight?
3 What are you going to do on Saturday night?
4 Where are you going to have lunch on Sunday?
5 Where are you going to go for your next vacation?

2 PRONUNCIATION diphthongs

a 4 51 Listen and repeat the picture words and sounds.

b Look at the other words. Which one has a different sound?

1	aɪ bike	might, buy, smile, since	5	ɪr ear	here, serious, engineer, where
2	eɪ train	may, fail, key, break	6	ʊr tourist	sure, bus, Europe, curious
3	oʊ phone	know, although, blouse, won't	7	aʊ owl	round, towel, south, borrow
4	ɛr chair	near, there, wear, careful	8	ɔɪ boy	town, noisy, enjoy, annoy

c 4 52 Listen and check.

3 SPEAKING & READING

a Interview your partner with the questionnaire. Ask for more information. Which of you is more indecisive?

ARE **YOU** INDECISIVE?

Do you have problems deciding...?

- what to buy when you go shopping
- what to wear when you go out
- what to eat at a restaurant
- what to do in your free time
- where to go on vacation

Do you often change your mind about things? What kind of things?

Do you think you are indecisive?

☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ I'm not sure

b Read the article carefully. Complete it with sentences A–E.

A And it isn't just in the coffee shop.
B But if all this choice is bad for us, what can we do about it?
C Buying a cup of coffee isn't as easy as it used to be.
D People often think that being able to choose from a lot of options is a good thing.
E Research shows that we feel happier when we have less choice.

c Do you agree that there is too much choice in the following? Why (not)?

a in supermarkets
b on TV
c in clothes stores
d in coffee shops
e in restaurants

4 VOCABULARY

word building: noun formation

Noun formation
With many verbs you can make a noun by adding *-ion*, *-sion*, or *-ation*, e.g.,
decide → *decision* *imagine* → *imagination*
Other verbs change when you form a noun, e.g.,
see (verb) → *sight* (noun)

a With a partner try to complete the chart.

Verb	Noun (+ *-ion*, *-sion*, or *-ation*)
opt	*option*
decide	*decision*
imagine	*imagination*
inform	
elect	
invite	
organize	
educate	
confuse	
Verb	**Noun (new word)**
choose	
live	
die	
succeed	

b 4.53 Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable in the verbs and nouns.

Is **too much** choice making us unhappy?

1_____. Years ago there were only two kinds of coffee – caffeinated or decaffeinated. But nowadays when you go into a coffee shop in the US you are given about twenty different options. Do you want a cappuccino, a latte, a caramel macchiato, an Americano, or a white mocha?

2_____. In big supermarkets we have to choose between thousands of products – my local supermarket has 35 different kinds of milk! When we are buying clothes or electrical gadgets, looking for a hotel on a travel website, or just deciding which TV channel to watch, we are constantly forced to choose from hundreds of possibilities.

3_____. However, university researchers have discovered that too much choice is making us feel unhappy and dissatisfied. The problem is that we have so many options that we get stressed every time we have to make a decision, because we are worried about making the wrong one. Then when we choose one thing, we feel bad because we think we are missing other opportunities, and this makes us dissatisfied with what we have chosen.

4_____. Professor Mark Lepper at Stanford University in the US found that people who tried six kinds of jam felt happier with their choice than those who were offered 24 jams to taste.

5_____. Professor Lepper suggests that we should try to relax when we have to choose something to buy. "Don't take these choices too seriously or it will become stressful," he says. "If you pick a sofa from IKEA in 30 seconds, you'll feel better than if you spend hours researching sofas – because you won't know what you're missing."

Adapted from a newspaper

9 & 10 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 If I _____ a snake, I'd be terrified.
a see b saw c seen

2 What _____ if a large dog attacked you?
a you would do
b will you do
c would you do

3 I _____ that bike if I were you.
a wouldn't buy b didn't buy c won't buy

4 I _____ in this house since I was 12.
a live b lived c have lived

5 We haven't seen my uncle _____ a long time.
a since b during c for

6 _____ have you had this car?
a How long b How much c How long time

7 I _____ married for 15 years. I got divorced in 2010.
a have been b am c was

8 When _____ John F. Kennedy die?
a did b has c was

9 The dishwasher _____ in 1886.
a were invented b was invented c is invented

10 The first book in the series was _____ ten years ago.
a write b wrote c written

11 The *Mona Lisa* was painted _____ da Vinci.
a for b by c to

12 When I was a child, I _____ have very long hair.
a use to b used to c used

13 Jack _____ like sports when he was in school.
a don't use to
b didn't used to
c didn't use to

14 I might _____ Keiko a ring for her birthday.
a buy b to buy c buying

15 Sue _____ come tonight. She has to work late.
a might no b not might c might not

VOCABULARY

a Make nouns from the verbs.

1 elect _____
2 decide _____
3 choose _____
4 organize _____
5 die _____
6 succeed _____
7 imagine _____

b Circle the word that is different.

1	butterfly	goat	fly	mosquito
2	pig	sheep	cow	lion
3	spider	shark	jellyfish	whale
4	scared	afraid	frightened	fear
5	math	grades	history	biology

c Complete with a verb from the list in the right form.

base design discover fall retire

1 In the US, most people _____ when they are 65.
2 I _____ in love for the first time when I was 15.
3 Penicillin was _____ by Alexander Fleming in 1928.
4 The *Lord of the Rings* movies were _____ on the books written by Tolkien.
5 The first Apple computer was _____ by Steve Wozniak.

d Write the words for the definitions.

1 **k**_____ a wild animal that lives in Australia
2 **b**_____ an insect that makes honey
3 **cr**_____ a reptile that lives in rivers in Africa and Australia
4 **b**_____ a male cow
5 **t**_____ very afraid
6 **s**_____ a couple usually do this before they get divorced
7 **s**_____ a school subject that includes physics, chemistry, and biology
8 **r**_____**c**_____ information you get from your school at the end of each quarter that says how you have done

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1

fear near we're bear

2

phobia cow show homework

3

website children spider might

4

scared there nervous wear

5 /yu/ subject usually used confusion

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 gi|raffe 2 e|le|phant 3 be|ha|vior 4 re|tire 5 de|sign

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article once. How did the dolphins protect the swimmers from the shark?

b Read the article again and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 The swimmers were swimming close to the beach.
2 The dolphins were doing strange things.
3 Mr. Howes and Helen were separated from the other two swimmers.
4 One of the dolphins jumped out of the water.
5 Mr. Howes saw a big fish swimming around the other two girls.
6 Mr. Howes understood that the dolphins were trying to help them.
7 The dolphins stopped the shark from attacking them.
8 In the end, the swimmers were rescued by lifeguards.
9 An expert said that dolphins often behave in this way.

c Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text. Guess their meaning from the context. Check with your teacher or with a dictionary.

DOLPHINS SAVE SWIMMERS FROM A SHARK ATTACK

Lifeguard Rob Howes, his daughter Niccy, 15, Karina Cooper, 15, and Helen Slade, 16, were swimming over 300 feet out to sea at Ocean Beach in New Zealand when suddenly seven dolphins swam toward them.

"They were behaving really weirdly," Mr. Howes said, "swimming in circles around us, and hitting the water with their tails." One dolphin swam toward Mr. Howes and Helen, who were about 65 feet away from the other two, and was trying to push them toward the other two girls.

"Then suddenly I saw another huge fish swimming around me and Helen," said Mr. Howes. It was in fact a 9 foot-long great white shark.

"It was only about six feet away from us," he said. At that point, he realized that the dolphins "were trying to herd the four of us together to protect us."

The shark then went toward the other two girls. Mr. Howes was terrified, especially because one of the swimmers was his daughter.

But the dolphins pushed the four swimmers back together and circled around them for another 40 minutes. Mr. Howes decided not to tell the three girls a shark was sharing the water with them.

Fortunately, the shark finally swam away, and the swimmers all reached the beach safely.

"I swim with dolphins perhaps three or four times a year, and I have never seen them behave like that," said Mr. Howes. However, dolphin expert Ingrid Visser said that there have been other reports from around the world about dolphins protecting swimmers. She said that, in this case, the dolphins probably sensed the humans were in danger and took action to protect them.

Adapted from a newspaper

VIDEO CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

4.54 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Reed Joanna Jeanna Sarah Jane Justin

1 Reed has had _____ for his whole life.
a arachnophobia
b agoraphobia
c acrophobia

2 Joanna would like to see leopards in the wild because _____.
a they have always been her favorite animals
b she saw them before on a safari and loved them
c they are one of the wild animals she hasn't seen yet

3 When Jeanna was at school _____.
a she didn't like making friends
b she liked most subjects
c she didn't like math or science

4 Sarah Jane has been a teacher _____.
a since 2006 b for 6 years c for 16 years

5 Justin loves the Empire State Building because _____.
a he thinks it's in exactly the right place
b he loves its height, and the view from the top
c it's one of the oldest skyscrapers in New York City

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say what you would do if...
a a dog attacked you
b you won the lottery
c you had more free time

2 ☐ talk about how long you have...
a lived where you are now
b had your laptop or computer
c been at this school

3 ☐ describe your life story

4 ☐ talk about when three things were invented or built

5 ☐ talk about three things you used to do when you were a child

6 ☐ say three things you might do next week

VIDEO **Short movies** Marwell Wildlife
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G expressing movement
V sports, expressing movement
P sports

Where did the ball go?

It went over the bar.

11A Bad losers

1 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING sports

a What sports can you see in the photos?

b 4 55 Look at the sports in the list. How do you pronounce them in English? Listen and check, and underline the stressed syllable. Do you know the names of any other sports in English?

au|to ra|cing base|ball bas|ket|ball box|ing cy|cling
golf hand|ball ho|ckey rug|by so|ccer ski|ing
te|nnis track and field vo|lley|ball wind|sur|fing

Verbs with sports

1 We use ***play*** for sports with a ball, e.g., *I play baseball at school.*
2 With sports ending in *-ing* (cycling, skiing, windsurfing, etc.), we usually use the verb, e.g., *I **cycle** on the weekend,* or ***go*** + **sport**, e.g., *I **go cycling** on the weekend.*
3 We use ***do*** for martial arts, yoga, Pilates, etc., e.g., *I **do yoga** twice a week.*

c Ask and answer with a partner. Give and ask for as much information as you can.

SPORTS — YOU **LOVE** THEM OR YOU **HATE** THEM.

- Do you do exercise or play any sports?
  ☐ Yes. What? Do you enjoy it? ☐ No. Why not?
- Did you use to exercise or play any sports? Why did you stop?
- Which sports do you think are the most exciting to watch?
- Which sports do you think are the most boring?
- Are you (or is anyone in your family) a fan of a sports team? Which one?
- Do you (or they) watch their games?
- What is the most exciting sporting event you have ever seen?

2 VOCABULARY sports, expressing movement

a Put these words in the correct column. Do you know any other words connected to these sports?

bunker corner hole lane lap match point penalty serve track

golf	soccer	tennis	track and field

b 4 56 Listen to the sports commentaries. What are the four sports?

c Listen again and complete the sentences with one word. Then match sentences 1–4 with pictures a–d.

1 ☐ The ball has gone _____ the lake.
2 ☐ The ball has gone _____ the bar.
3 ☐ Now they have to run _____ the track one more time.
4 ☐ That's a very hard return, but the ball has gone _____!

d ➤ p.162 Vocabulary Bank *Expressing movement.*

3 GRAMMAR expressing movement

a Complete the sentences with a verb from the list.

hit kick run throw

1 In basketball you have to _____ the ball **through** a ring with a basket.
2 In soccer you have to _____ the ball **into** a goal.
3 In tennis you have to _____ the ball **over** a net.
4 In an 800-meter race you have to _____ twice **around** the track.

b Look at the sentence below. Try to think of three different verbs you could put in the blank, e.g., *walked*.

The man _____ **along** the street until he got to the corner.

c ➤ **p.146 Grammar Bank 11A.** Learn more about expressing movement and practice it.

d Look at the photos in **1**. Say what the people are doing.

He's hitting the ball over the net.

4 READING & SPEAKING

a When you play a sport or a game with family or friends, how do you react if you lose? Are you a good or bad loser? Are any of your family members or friends bad losers?

b Read the text and answer with a name. Which of the bad losers...?

1 insulted the match official
2 did not want to do his job after the match
3 became very emotional when he couldn't take part
4 tried to hit somebody
5 said sorry after the event

c Read the text again and fill in the blanks with the prepositions in the list.

down in out out of (x2) past

d Look at the highlighted words in the text that are all related to sports. With a partner guess their meaning.

e In pairs answer the questions.

1 Who do you think was the worst loser?
2 Whose behavior do you think was understandable?
3 Do you know any famous sportspeople who are bad losers?

5 WRITING

a Talk to a partner. Do you think there is too much soccer on TV? Why (not)?

b ➤ **p.117 Writing** *An opinion essay.* Read a model essay about sports shows on TV, and then write one.

6 (4 59)) SONG *The Final Countdown* ♫

Bad losers?

The hardest lesson to learn in sports is how to lose with dignity, without blaming your defeat on the referees or refusing to shake hands with your opponent. Here are some famous moments when losing was just too hard...

In 1981 at Wimbledon a young John McEnroe was serving. The umpire said that his serve was [1]_____, but McEnroe thought it was [2]_____. He became furious and shouted "You CANNOT be serious!" at the umpire. He also called the umpire "an incompetent fool!"

In the 2003 Track and Field World Championships the 100-meter runner, Jon Drummond, was disqualified for a false start. Drummond lay [3]_____ on the track and began to cry. Two hours later his coach told journalists: "He's still crying. We're making him drink water because he's becoming dehydrated."

In the 1982 German Grand Prix Nelson Piquet was winning the race. He was trying to pass Eliseo Salazar (who was last in the race), but Salazar didn't let him go [4]_____ him, and Piquet crashed into Salazar. Piquet jumped [5]_____ his car and started trying to hit and kick Salazar (without much success!).

South Korean soccer player Ahn Jung-Hwan scored the goal that sent Italy [6]_____ the 2002 World Cup when they beat them 2–1. But Jung-Hwan also played for the Italian soccer club Perugia. After the match the president of the club, Luciano Gaucci, announced that the player's contract would not be renewed. "That gentleman will never set foot in Perugia again," Gaucci said. "I have no intention of paying a salary to somebody who has ruined Italian soccer." Gaucci later apologized, but Ahn Jung-Hwan left the club and never went back to an Italian club.

When England won the Rugby World Cup in 2003 by beating Australia in the last minute of the match, the Australian Prime minister, John Howard, was so angry that in the medals ceremony he almost threw the medals at the English players. His behavior was described by a journalist as being "Like an unhappy five-year-old at a birthday party who starts throwing toys around."

Adapted from a newspaper

G word order of phrasal verbs
V phrasal verbs
P linking

What's the first thing you do when you wake up?

I turn on the radio.

11B Are you a morning person?

1 SPEAKING & READING

a Answer the questions with a partner.

1 What time do you wake up during the week?
2 Do you use an alarm clock to wake up? If not, what makes you wake up?
3 Do you get up immediately after you wake up?
4 When you first get up do you feel...?
a awful
b a little sleepy
c awake and energetic

b Read an interview with Sara Mohr-Pietsch. Match the questions and answers.

A Do you choose what you wear the night before?
B Do you have anything to eat before you go to work?
C Do you use an alarm clock to wake up?
D How do you feel when you wake up?
E How do you get to work?
F How does this affect your social life?
G ~~What time do you get up when you're doing the show?~~
H What time do you go to bed when you're working the next day?
I Would you like to change your working hours?

c Cover the answers and look at the questions. With a partner remember her answers.

d Answer the questions with a partner.

1 Would you like to work the same hours as the radio host?
2 In general are you a morning or evening person?

Early bird!

Sara Mohr-Pietsch tells us what it's like to be an early-morning radio show host on BBC Radio 3.

1 *What time do you get up when you're doing the show?*
I get up at 4:45 a.m. and leave the house at 5:20.

2 _____
Yes. I usually set my radio alarm to come on at 4:30 so that I can wake up slowly as I listen to the world news. I set my phone alarm for 4:45 and leave it on the other side of the room so I have to get up to turn it off!

3 _____
It depends – some mornings I feel rested and awake, but other mornings it's hard to get out of bed. It depends on the season. I find I need much more sleep in the winter.

4 _____
If I'm slow to get up, then I wait until I'm in the studio before having breakfast, but most mornings I have a bowl of cereal before I leave the house.

5 _____
That depends on the season, too. In the summer I usually wait until the morning to decide. But in the winter I often leave clothes out the night before so that I can stay in bed until the last minute!

6 _____
A car picks me up at 5:20.

7 _____
In the winter, any time between 8:30 and 9:30 p.m. In the summer, usually more like 9:00 to 10:00 p.m.

8 _____
What social life? I certainly can't go out for a wild night during the week, but I'm lucky because a lot of my closest friends live near me, so I can see them in the evenings and still go to bed early.

9 _____
Sometimes I think I would like to have more normal working hours, but I love my job so much that I'd never want to give it up. The buzz of being "live" on the radio early in the morning as people start their days is really wonderful.

2 VOCABULARY phrasal verbs

a Look at some sentences from the interview. With a partner say what the highlighted phrases mean.

> "I leave it on the other side of the room so I have to get up to turn it off!"
>
> "A car picks me up at 5:20."
>
> "I love my job so much that I'd never want to give it up."

> **Phrasal verbs**
> *Wake up, get up, turn on / off, give up,* etc., are common phrasal verbs (verbs with a preposition or adverb).
> Sometimes the meaning of the two separate words can help you guess the meaning of the phrasal verb, e.g., *turn off.* Sometimes the meaning of the two words does not help you, e.g., *give up.*

b Read the information box. Can you think of a phrasal verb that means...?

1 to try to find something you have lost
2 to put on clothes in a store to see if they are the right size
3 to have a friendly relationship (with somebody)

c ➤ **p.163 Vocabulary Bank** *Phrasal verbs.*

3 GRAMMAR word order of phrasal verbs

a Look at the picture and underline the **object** of the phrasal verb in each sentence.

b Complete the rules about separable phrasal verbs with *noun* or *pronoun*.

1 If the object of a phrasal verb is a _____, you can put it **after** the verb + *up, on,* etc., **OR between** the verb and *up, on,* etc.
2 If the object of a phrasal verb is a _____, you must put it **between** the verb and *up, on,* etc.

c ➤ **p.146 Grammar Bank 11B.** Learn more about the word order of phrasal verbs and practice it.

4 PRONUNCIATION linking

a 5.4 Listen and write the missing words.

1 There's a wet towel on the floor. Please ___ ___ ___.
2 I can't concentrate with that music on. Please ___ ___ ___.
3 If you don't know what the word means, ___ ___ ___.
4 Why have you taken your coat off? ___ ___ ___!
5 This book was very expensive. Please ___ ___ ___.
6 Why are you wearing your coat in here? ___ ___ ___!

b Practice saying the sentences. Try to link the phrasal verbs and pronouns, e.g., pick‿it‿up.

5 SPEAKING

a Read the questions in the questionnaire and think about your answers.

b Work in pairs. Interview your partner with the questions.

PHRASAL VERB QUESTIONNAIRE

- Have you ever forgotten to **turn** your cell phone **off** at a concert or the movies?
- Do you **throw away** old clothes or do you give them to other people?
- Do you enjoy **trying on** clothes when you go shopping?
- Do you often **go away** on the weekend? Where to?
- Before you go shopping, do you usually **write down** what you have to buy? Do you only buy what's on the list?
- Do you enjoy **looking after** small children? Why (not)?
- Have you ever asked your neighbors to **turn** the TV or the music **down**? What happened?
- What's the first thing you **turn on** after you **wake up** in the morning?

G *so, neither* + auxiliaries
V similarities
P sentence stress, /ð/ and /θ/

I have a son named James.

So do I.

11C What a coincidence!

Some years ago, two identical twins were born in Minnesota in the US. They were adopted by two different families soon after. One brother was adopted by a couple named Lewis in Lima, Ohio, and his brother was adopted by a couple named Springer in Dayton, Ohio. By coincidence, both boys were named "Jim" by their new parents. When Jim Lewis was six years old, he discovered that he had an identical twin brother. When he was thirty-nine, he decided to find and contact his brother. Six weeks later, he met Jim Springer in a cafe in Dayton, and they probably had a conversation something like this...

1 GRAMMAR *so, neither* + auxiliaries

a Look at the photos and describe the two men.

b Read about the two men and answer the questions.

1 Who are Jim Springer and Jim Lewis?
2 Why didn't they know each other?
3 What did Jim Lewis decide to do when he was 39?
4 How long did it take him?

c 5 5 Cover the dialogue. Listen once. Try to remember three things they have in common.

d Listen again and fill in the blanks.

A Hi! I'm Jim.
B So [1]____ I. Great to meet you. Sit down. Are you married, Jim?
A Yes... well, I've been married twice.
B Yeah? So [2]____ I. Do you have any children?
A I have one son.
B So [3]____ I. What's his name?
A James Allen.
B That's amazing! My son's name is James Allen, too!
A Did you go to college, Jim?
B No, I didn't.
A Neither [4]____ I. I was a terrible student.
B So [5]____ I. Hey, this is my dog Toy.
A I don't believe it! My dog's named Toy, too!
B He wants to go outside. My wife usually takes him. I don't do any exercise at all.
A Don't worry. Neither [6]____ I. I drive everywhere.
B What car do you have?
A A Chevrolet.
B So [7]____ I!
A Hey, let's go and have a hamburger, OK?
B Sure. You know, I once worked in a hamburger restaurant.
A Unbelievable! So [8]____ I!

e Which coincidence do you think is the most surprising?

f Look at the dialogue again. Answer the questions with a partner.

1 Find two phrases that the twins use...
when they have something [+] in common.
when they have something [−] in common.
2 Why do you think the auxiliary verb changes?

g ➤ p.146 Grammar Bank 11C. Learn more about *so, neither*, etc., and practice them.

2 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress, /ð/ and /θ/

a 5 7 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

ð	mother brother neither they
θ	thumb both thirty throw

b 5 8 Add four words to each row. Listen and check.

although math other there thing thirsty through clothing

c 5 9 Listen and repeat the dialogues. Underline the stressed words.

1 **A** I like tea. **B** So do I.
2 **A** I'm tired. **B** So am I.
3 **A** I don't smoke. **B** Neither do I.
4 **A** I'm not hungry. **B** Neither am I.

d 5 10 Listen and respond. Say you're the same.

I take the bus to work. *So do I.*

3 SPEAKING

a Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

Me	Who else in the class?
I love _____. (a kind of music)	
I don't like _____. (a drink)	
I'm very _____. (adjective of personality)	
I'm not very good at _____. (sport or activity)	
I'm going to _____ after class. (an activity)	
I have to _____ every day. (an obligation)	
I don't eat _____. (a kind of food)	

b Move around the class saying your sentences. For each sentence, try to find someone like you, and write down his or her name. Respond to other people's sentences. Say *So do / am I*, or *Neither do / am I* if you have something in common.

A *I love heavy metal.* **B** *Really? I hate it!* **C** *So do I.*

4 VOCABULARY similarities

a Read about some more similarities between the two Jims. Complete the text with a word from the list.

as both identical like neither similar so

The two Jims looked exactly [1]_____ each other when they were younger. They [2]_____ liked math and carpentry – but hated spelling. After finishing school they had [3]_____ jobs: Lewis was a security guard, and Springer was a deputy sheriff. Jim Lewis first married a woman named Linda, and then a woman named Betty, exactly the same names [4]_____ Jim Springer's first and second wives. Even their tastes in sports are [5]_____ – Jim Springer likes baseball and [6]_____ does Jim Lewis. Jim Lewis doesn't like basketball and [7]_____ does Jim Springer.

b Complete the sentences about you and your family. Tell your partner.

1 I have the same color eyes as my _____.
2 I look like my _____.
3 My personality is similar to my _____'s.
4 My _____ and I both like _____.
5 I like _____ and so does my _____.
6 I don't like _____ and neither does my _____.

5 LISTENING

a 5 11 Look at the photo of a couple and listen to a news story about them. What is the coincidence?

b Listen again and answer the questions.

1 Why did Kelly Hildebrandt put her name into Facebook?
2 What did she discover?
3 What did she do next?
4 What other things do they have in common?
5 Why were they worried?
6 What do they call each other?
7 What problem did they once have?
8 What are they definitely *not* going to do?

c Have you ever put your name into Google or Facebook? Did you discover anything interesting?

Practical English Time to go home

EPISODE 6

1 VIDEO ROB AND JENNY TALK ABOUT THE FUTURE

a 5 12 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Rob is going home today.
2 He says it will be difficult to stay in touch.
3 Jenny suggests that she could go to London.
4 Rob thinks it's a good idea.
5 They're going to a restaurant tonight.
6 Barbara wants to talk to Jenny.

American and British English
You just missed him = American English;
You've just missed him = British English
cell (phone) = American English;
mobile (phone) = British English

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

2 VIDEO ON THE PHONE

a 5 13 Cover the dialogue and watch or listen. Answer the questions.

1 Who does Rob want to speak to?
2 How many times does he have to call?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Hello. *Broadway Grill.*	Oh, sorry. I have the wrong number.
NewYork24seven. _____ can I help you?	Hello. Can I speak to Barbara Keaton, please?
Just a second. I'll put you _____. ... Hello.	Hi, is that Barbara?
No, I'm sorry. She's not at her _____ right now.	Can I leave a message, please?
Sure.	Can you tell her Rob Walker called? I'll call back later.
I'll give her the _____. You could try her cell phone.	Yes, I'll do that. Thank you.
I'm sorry, I can't take your _____ at the moment. Please _____ a message after the beep.	Hello, Barbara. This is Rob returning your call.
NewYork24seven. How can I help you?	Hello. It's Rob again. Can I speak to Barbara, please?
Just a second. I'm sorry, the line's _____. Do you want to hold?	OK, I'll hold.
Hello.	Hi, Barbara. It's me, Rob.
Rob, hi! I tried to call you earlier.	What did you want to talk about?

c 5 14 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practice the dialogues with a partner.

e In pairs, role-play the dialogue.

A (book open) You are the Broadway Grill, the receptionist, etc. You start with *Hello. Broadway Grill.*

B (book closed) You want to speak to Barbara.

f Change roles.

3 VIDEO IN CENTRAL PARK AGAIN

a 5 15 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Is it a happy ending or a sad ending?

b Watch or listen again and answer the questions.

1 Who has some news?
2 What did Barbara offer Rob?
3 What did Jenny do this morning?
4 What does Jenny ask Barbara to do?

c Look at the **Social English phrases**. Can you remember any of the missing words?

Social English phrases

Rob You _____ first.
Jenny That's great _____.
Jenny I'll _____ her.
Jenny I'll explain _____.
Barbara Is everything _____?
Jenny _____ better.

d 5 16 Watch or listen and complete the phrases.

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases. How do you say them in your language?

Can you...?

- ☐ call somebody and say who you are / who you want to talk to
- ☐ leave a message for somebody
- ☐ respond to news

G past perfect
V verb phrases
P contractions: *had / hadn't*

Why did the people shout?

Because a shark had come into the pool.

12A Strange but true!

RLD NEWS AROUND THE WORLD NEWS AROUND THE WORLD

Here is our selection of last week's true stories

AUSTRALIA

In Sydney, early in the morning, some swimmers were taking a swim in an outdoor swimming pool that was very close to the ocean. The swimmers were very surprised when suddenly the pool assistants started shouting "Get out of the water! Quickly!" The swimmers immediately got out. Then they realized that there was a shark at the other end! _____ Fortunately none of the swimmers were hurt and the shark was caught in a net and put back into the ocean.

ENGLAND

Security guards at Stansted Airport were amazed when they saw a dog getting off a train and walking on its own toward the airport terminal. They caught the dog and took it to the police. Thanks to a microchip in its neck, they discovered that its name was Diesel and that it belonged to a woman named Sarah Chapman, who lived in London, 31 miles away. Sarah had gone on vacation for a few days and had left Diesel with some friends. _____ It had then gotten on a train and had traveled 31 miles to Stansted Airport, changing trains on the way. Sarah said: "I'm sure Diesel went to the airport to look for me!"

1 READING & SPEAKING

a Read the stories and look at the pictures. Fill in the blanks with one of the sentences below.

AUSTRALIA

1 The shark had already attacked three people.
2 A large wave had carried the shark into the pool during the night.

ENGLAND

3 Unfortunately, the dog had bitten one of her friends.
4 The dog had run away and had gone to the local train station.

THE US

5 The robber thought he had taken bags worth a lot of money.
6 The robber had taken money from armored cars before.

SWEDEN

7 The woman had gotten confused at the check-in desk.
8 The woman had left her passport at home.

b Match verbs 1–10 with phrases A–J.

1	[H]	get into / out of	A on the belt
2	[ ]	get on / off	B a swim
3	[ ]	knock someone	C vacation
4	[ ]	realize	D down the street
5	[ ]	put the luggage	E out
6	[ ]	go on	F a train
7	[ ]	take	G a woman
8	[ ]	leave the dog	H the swimming pool
9	[ ]	chase someone	I with friends
10	[ ]	belong to	J that there was a shark in the pool

THE US

A 33-year-old Providence, Rhode Island man was arrested for knocking out the driver of an armored car and taking four bags of money. However, each of the bags contained only $800 in pennies. The money bags each weighed 30 pounds, and they slowed the man down as he tried to get away. When police officers arrived at the scene, they chased the robber down the street and easily caught him with the heavy money bags.

SWEDEN

Airport workers in the luggage area at Arlanda Airport in Sweden were surprised to see an old lady sitting on the luggage belt next to her suitcase. She had put her luggage on the belt and then had sat down on the belt herself. A spokesman at Stockholm's Arlanda Airport said "Unfortunately, she did not understand when she was given check-in instructions. She got on the belt together with her bag. Luckily, it wasn't a long ride – only a few feet."

2 GRAMMAR past perfect

a Look at these highlighted verbs from the Australia story. Answer the questions.

A Then they realized that there was a shark at the other end!

B A large wave had carried the shark into the pool during the night.

1 Which action happened first, **A** or **B**?
2 What are the two parts of the verb in sentence **B**?

b Look at the other three stories again (including the missing sentences) and underline examples of *had* + past participle. Did these actions happen before or after the main part of the story?

c ➤ **p.148 Grammar Bank 12A.** Learn more about the past perfect and practice it.

d Complete the following sentences in your own words. Use the past perfect.

1 When I got to the check-in desk, I suddenly realized that...
2 When we arrived back from our vacation, we found that...
3 When the movie started, I realized immediately that...
4 I couldn't answer any of the exam questions because I...
5 We spent 20 minutes in the parking lot looking for the car because we couldn't remember...

e Compare with a partner. Are your sentences the same or different?

f Work with a partner. **A** reread the story about Australia, **B** reread the story about the US. Underline the key words and events. Then **A** (books closed) retell the story in your own words. **B** (books open) help **A** when necessary. Then change.

3 PRONUNCIATION

contractions: *had / hadn't*

Contractions: past perfect

In conversation we often contract *had* in the past perfect after a subject pronoun (*I, you*, etc.), e.g.,

*When I got to the airport, I realized that **I'd** forgotten my passport.*

*I suddenly remembered that we **hadn't** told Sue about the party.*

a 5 18 Listen and write six past perfect sentences. Then practice saying the sentences.

b ➤ **Communication** *What had happened?* **A** *p.104* **B** *p.109.* Try to guess your partner's sentences.

4 LISTENING

a 5 19 Listen to another news story. Then number the events in order.

- ☐ Joey attacked her.
- ☐ Joey sat on her plate.
- ☐ Joey went to sleep.
- ☐ Katie came home from work.
- ☐ Katie met her neighbor.

b With a partner, try to guess what you think had happened.

c 5 20 Now listen and find out what had happened. Had anybody guessed right?

G reported speech
V *say* or *tell*?
P double consonants

She told him she was leaving.

He said that he would write.

12B Gossip is good for you

1 SPEAKING & LISTENING

a Read the dictionary definition and then answer the questions with a partner.

gossip /ˈɡɑsəp/ *(v* and *n)* to talk about other people, especially their private life

1 What kind of people gossip more?
   a people in cities or people in small towns
   b young people or old people
   c men or women

2 Who do people most often gossip about?
   a their neighbors
   b people at work or school
   c celebrities

3 Do you have any friends who gossip a lot?

4 How do you feel when people gossip about *you*?

b 5 21 Listen to a conversation between Rosemary and Iris. What has happened to Jack and Emma? Listen again and answer the questions.

1 Jack and Emma are the woman's...
   a neighbors. b friends. c children.

2 Rosemary thinks she heard them having...
   a a conversation.
   b a party.
   c an argument.

3 According to Rosemary, Emma said she was...
   a seeing another man.
   b looking for a new job.
   c going to stay with her mother.

4 She said she had...
   a left the dog with a neighbor.
   b left the children with her sister.
   c left the dinner in the microwave.

5 Iris is going to...
   a tell her husband.
   b tell her family.
   c tell another neighbor.

c 5 22 Now listen to what Jack and Emma *really* said last night. Was Rosemary right about everything?

2 GRAMMAR reported speech

a Look at some extracts from the conversations. Compare what Emma said (direct speech) with what Rosemary says that she said (reported speech). Underline the words that are different in the highlighted reported speech.

1 **What Emma said**
   I'm going to stay with my mom.
   I won't come back...
   I've taken the children to my sister...

2 **What Rosemary and Iris said**
   She said that she was going to stay with her mother! She told him that she wouldn't come back.
   Ooh, how awful. What about the children?
   She said she'd taken them to her sister.

b ➤ p.148 Grammar Bank 12B. Learn more about reported speech and practice it.

c 5 24 Listen to some sentences in direct speech. Say them in reported speech. Begin with *He said*... or *She said*...

I'm in a hurry. *She said that she was in a hurry.*

I'll write. *He said that he would write.*

3 VOCABULARY *say* or *tell*?

Complete the sentences with the right form of *say* or *tell*.

1 "I have a problem," Annie _____.
2 Annie _____ us that she had a problem.
3 Lisa _____ that she was leaving her husband.
4 He _____ the teacher that he had left his homework at home.
5 His teacher _____ that he didn't believe him.
6 Can you _____ Mark that I can't meet him tonight?
7 What did you _____ to her?
8 When I was a child, my mother used to _____ us not to _____ hello to people we didn't know.

4 SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. **A** tell your partner the following. **B** Listen and take notes. Then change roles.

- something about your parents or grandparents
- a place you have been to
- something that you're planning to do in the summer
- something that you did last weekend

The information can be true or invented, but it must be interesting!

b Change partners. Tell partner 2 what partner 1 said. Decide together whether you think your previous partners were telling the truth or had invented the information.

He told me (that)... *He said (that)...*

5 PRONUNCIATION double consonants

a Look at five groups of words. Match each group to a vowel sound.

1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐ 5 ☐

a	gossip	college	dollar	bottle	robber
b	luggage	funny	runner	summer	butterfly
c	written	miss	bitten	different	middle
d	happy	married	cabbage	rabbit	baggage
e	letter	better	message	umbrella	tennis

b 5 25 Listen and check.

Double consonants
The vowel sound before a double consonant is normally short when it is the stressed syllable, e.g., *gossip* /ɑ/, *luggage* /ʌ/, *written* /ɪ/, *happy* /æ/, and *letter* /e/.
Double consonants are pronounced the same as single consonants.

c How do you think you pronounce the words below? Check the pronunciation and meaning with your dictionary.

kettle waffle pottery slippers supper

6 READING

HERE'S A SECRET:
Gossip might be good for you

We all enjoy gossiping about people we know, although sometimes we might feel guilty about it afterward. However, new research shows that gossiping might be good for us.

Professor McAndrew, a professor of psychology, believes that gossiping is in our genes, and we feel pleasure when we share interesting information. McAndrew says that gossiping is a social skill, and we need to learn to do it well. According to the professor, gossip can be a positive thing when people use it to build connections with other people in their social group. But it can be a negative thing when somebody gossips about another person only to make themselves feel more important in the group.

Professor McAndrew's research also showed that people were happy to pass on good news but only if it was about a friend. They also enjoyed passing on negative information about other people when it was about somebody they disliked.

Another thing that the new study showed was that men and women gossip differently. In general, the men in the study shared gossip with their wives or girlfriends, but not with their male friends. Women however, gossiped with both partners and friends.

Adapted from a newspaper

a Read the article and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 We sometimes feel bad after we gossip.
2 Professor McAndrew says that we are programmed to gossip.
3 Gossiping can be good or bad – it depends on why we do it.
4 People enjoy sharing bad news about people they like.
5 Men gossip with their friends more than with their family.

b Look at the highlighted words and phrases. With a partner, guess their meaning.

c Do you agree with what the article says about the way men and women gossip?

7 5 26 SONG
I Heard It Through the Grapevine ♫

G questions without auxiliaries
V review
P review

12C The *American English File* quiz

Who painted that picture?

I can't remember.

1 GRAMMAR questions without auxiliaries

a With a partner, see how many of the quiz questions you can answer from memory.

b Now try to find the answers you couldn't remember in Files 1–11.

c Look at 1 and 2 in the quiz. Answer these questions.

1 How is question 1 different from question 2?
2 What is the subject of the verb in question 1?
3 What is the subject of the verb in question 2?
4 Which other questions in the quiz are similar grammatically to question 1?

d ➤ p.148 Grammar Bank 12C. Learn more about questions without auxiliaries and practice them.

The

AMERICAN ENGLISH FILE QUIZ

1 Who painted *Mr and Mrs Clark and Percy*?
2 How did Caroline de Bendern lose a fortune?
3 Which airport in Asia has a pet hotel?
4 What does *boy toy* mean?
5 Whose wedding dress did Lindka Cierach design?
6 What vitamin does sunlight produce?
7 Who plays Dr. House in the series *House, M.D.*?
8 What did Captain Edward Murphy give his name to?
9 How many natural disasters did Mr. and Mrs. Svanström experience on their around-the-world trip?
10 Who wrote the short story *Girl*?
11 Which singer made reggae popular all over the world?
12 Who invented the dishwasher, a man or a woman?
13 Who could never find his things when he was a child?
14 Who shouted "You CANNOT be serious!" at a tennis umpire at Wimbledon?
15 What is Kelly Hildebrandt's husband named?

2 WRITING & SPEAKING

a ➤ **Communication** *General knowledge quiz* **A** *p.105* **B** *p.110*. First write the questions. Then ask them to your partner.

b With a partner, make your own quiz. Write two questions with or without auxiliaries for each category. Make sure you know the answers!

c Ask your questions to another pair.

HISTORY

MUSIC

SCIENCE

ART

MOVIES

11&12 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 The golf ball _____ the hole, and everybody cheered.
a went on b went c went into

2 The door opened and two men _____.
a came out b came out of c out

3 Your towel's on the floor. _____!
a Pick up it b Pick up c Pick it up

4 I've lost my keys. Can you help me _____?
a look them for
b look for them
c look after them

5 **A** I love traveling. **B** _____.
a So do I b Neither do I c So am I

6 **A** I can't do this exercise. **B** _____.
a So can I
b Neither can't I
c Neither can I

7 **A** I went to the movies last night.
B _____. What did you see?
a So went I b So I did c So did I

8 I was too late, and when I got to the train station, _____.
a the train has left
b the train had left
c the train left

9 When we got to the airport, we remembered that we _____ all the windows in our house.
a hadn't closed
b didn't close
c haven't closed

10 Alicia told me that she _____ to marry Berto.
a wants b want c wanted

11 Kevin said he _____ back in ten minutes.
a would be b was c will be

12 My grandfather _____ that he had worked in a factory when he was young.
a said us b told c told us

13 Who _____ in the house next door?
a lives b live c does live

14 Where _____ that dress?
a you bought b bought you c did you buy

15 How many people _____ to go on the excursion?
a do want b does want c want

VOCABULARY

a Complete with a word from the list.

along down into off out back past toward through up

1 We drove _____ a lot of tunnels on our way to New York City.
2 When it started to rain, we went _____ a cafe to wait until it stopped.
3 She walked _____ the street, looking in all the store windows.
4 When the dog started running _____ me, I was terrified.
5 Go _____ the gas station, and it's the next turn on the right.
6 You have to take _____ your shoes before going into the temple.
7 If you don't know the meaning of a word, look it _____ in the online dictionary.
8 Can you turn _____ the heat? It's very hot in here.
9 If you don't like the jacket, take it _____ to the store.
10 Can you find _____ what time the movie ends?

b Complete the missing words.

1 Julia and Jane are **i**_____ twins.
2 I live on the same street **a**_____ my sister.
3 Her new novel is very **s**_____ to her last one.
4 Dave isn't very tall, and **n**_____ is his son.
5 My parents **b**_____ love classical music.

c Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

do get give go leave look put take tell turn

1 _____ skiing
2 _____ on your coat
3 _____ me a story
4 _____ forward to something
5 _____ your dog with friends
6 _____ up the music
7 _____ a swim
8 _____ off the train
9 _____ up smoking
10 _____ karate

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1 luggage rugby summer put

2 find written middle fill

3 around down through out

4 neither throw nothing both

5 gossip together message negative

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 wind|sur|fing 2 to|ward 3 for|ward 4 si|mi|lar 5 di|fferent

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article once. What was the amazing coincidence?

b Read the article again and number the events in the order they happened

- ☐ Their daughter was born.
- ☐ They both had a heart operation in the same hospital.
- ☐ Alistair had another heart operation.
- ☐ They got married.
- ☐ They discovered that they had been in the same hospital twenty years earlier.
- ☐ They discovered they had the same heart problem.
- ☐ They met at a swimming pool.
- ☐ Alistair asked Alison to marry him.

c Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text. Guess their meaning from the context. Check with your teacher or with a dictionary.

Heart couple's amazing coincidence

When Suzanne met Alistair Cotton at a swimming pool in 1995, they were amazed to discover that they both suffered from the same extremely rare heart condition. They started going out together and fell in love, but several months later, they discovered an even bigger coincidence.

Almost twenty years earlier when they were children (Suzanne was seven and Alistair was fourteen), they had both had a lifesaving heart operation in the same hospital, on the same day, performed by the same heart surgeon. After their operations, they had spent several days recovering in the same hospital ward (although they have no memories of seeing or speaking to each other.) They certainly had no idea that twenty years later they would meet and fall in love with the child in the next bed. Suzanne, now 43, said, "We were very shocked by the coincidence. We were obviously destined to be together."

Alistair continued to have difficulties with his heart, and he had to have another major heart operation. As soon as he woke up after the operation, he proposed to Suzanne, and the couple got married in 2002.

The following year, Suzanne became pregnant, and baby Hannah was born in 2004 and is now a happy, healthy child who shows no signs of having inherited any heart problems from her parents. Suzanne said, "Many heart patients can't have children or their children are born with heart problems themselves, so for our amazing story to have such a happy ending is just wonderful."

Adapted from a newspaper

VIDEO CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

5 28 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

James Ruth Justin Andy Alison

1 The twins that James knows _____.
   a have very similar personalities
   b are very similar in appearance
   c have the same appearance and personality

2 Ruth doesn't mind losing when _____.
   a the person who wins is better than she is
   b she has really enjoyed the game
   c she thinks she hasn't played very well

3 The sport Justin doesn't play anymore is _____.
   a basketball b soccer c baseball

4 Andy _____.
   a was an evening person in the past
   b was a morning person in the past
   c has never been good in the morning

5 Alison thinks that _____.
   a women gossip more than men
   b men gossip more than women
   c men and women both gossip

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ describe three things that you have to do in certain sports using a verb and a preposition of movement

2 ☐ make true sentences with *take off*, *turn down*, and *look after*

3 ☐ say true things about you – your partner responds with *so* (*am I*, etc.) and *neither* (*do I*, etc.)

4 ☐ continue these sentences with the past perfect:
   a I got to the train station, but...
   b When I saw him, I was surprised because...

5 ☐ report two things that somebody said to you yesterday using *said* or *told me*

6 ☐ ask your partner three questions without an auxiliary verb beginning with *Who*, *How many*, and *Which*

VIDEO **Short movies** Sports in New Zealand
Watch and enjoy the movie.

Communication

1A WHAT'S HIS NAME? HOW DO YOU SPELL IT? Student A

1 Jessica _____	2 _____ Hughes	3 Bethany _____
4 _____ Dixon	5 Abigail _____	6 _____ Kelly

a Ask **B** questions to complete the missing information.

Photo 1 – What's her last name? How do you spell it?

b Answer **B**'s questions.

Asking for repetition
If you don't hear or understand somebody, you can say:
Sorry? Can you say that again? Can you repeat that?

1B ALEXANDER AND OLIVER Student A

a Ask **B** questions and complete the chart for Oliver.

Name	Alexander	Oliver
How old / ?	32	
Where / from?	Los Angeles	
Where / live?	San Francisco	
What / do?	journalist	
What / like?	modern art, classical music	
What / not like?	sports	

b Answer **B**'s questions about Alexander.

1C DESCRIBE AND DRAW Student A

a Look at your painting for a minute.

b Describe your painting for **B** to draw.

c Listen to **B** describing his / her painting. Try to draw it. Don't look at it. Ask **B** questions to help you.

d Now compare your drawings with the original paintings. Are they similar?

2B *AT, IN, ON* Student A

a Ask **B** your questions.

1 When were you born?
2 Where do you usually have breakfast?
3 What time do you usually have lunch?
4 What days of the week do you usually go out in the evening?
5 What time of day do you usually do your English homework?
6 When do you usually take a vacation?
7 Where do you usually listen to music?
8 When's your birthday?

b Answer **B**'s questions using *at*, *in*, or *on*. Ask *What about you?* for each question.

2C HAPPY ENDING

1 Why didn't Hannah see the man who was crossing the street?
2 Who was the man?
3 Why did he cross without looking?
4 Where did they go after that?
5 What did they order?
6 Why was Jamie on Bridge Street?
7 What and when was the concert?
8 What was special about the day?

3A WHAT ARE YOUR PLANS? Student A

a Ask **B** your questions using *going to*. Ask for more information.

- What / you / do after class?
- What time / you / get up tomorrow?
- Where / you / have lunch tomorrow?
- What / you / do on Saturday night?
- Where / you / go for your next vacation?
- / you / study English next year?

b Answer **B**'s questions. Give more information.

3C WHAT'S THE WORD? Student A

a Look at the six words or phrases on your card. Think for a minute how you are going to define them.

photo

lazy

sneakers

go sightseeing (*verb*)

Arrivals

passenger

b You have two minutes to communicate your words to **B**. Remember you can't use any part or form of the words on the card.

c Now listen to **B**'s definitions. Try to guess the words.

4A HAS HE DONE IT YET? Students A+B

Look at the picture for one minute and try to remember what's in it. Then go to p.102.

5A HOW FAST IS YOUR LIFE? Students A+B

Check your partner's score and tell him or her. Then read to see what it means.

How to score:
1 point for never
2 points for sometimes
3 points for often

Is your score between 6 and 9? You are living life in the slow lane. Compared to most people, you take things easy and don't get stressed by modern-day living. You are patient, relaxed, and easygoing. Most of the time this is good news, but sometimes it can be a problem. For example, are you sometimes late for appointments?

Is your score between 10 and 14? You have a medium pace of life. You are probably somebody who can change the speed at which you live depending on the situation.

Is your score between 15 and 18? You are living life in the fast lane, rushing around and trying to do many different activities and projects at the same time. You are impatient and you find it difficult to relax. You are probably very productive, but your relationships and health could suffer as a result.

Adapted from Richard Wiseman's Quirkology website

Communication

4A HAS HE DONE IT YET? Students A+B

a Work individually. Look at the list of things Max always does every morning. Has he already done them? Try to remember what was in the picture. Write sentences.

He's already made the bed.
OR *He hasn't made the bed yet.*

- make the bed
- wash his coffee cups
- clean up his desk
- pick up his towel
- take the dog for a walk
- turn off his computer
- put his clothes in the closet
- take a shower
- have breakfast

b Work in pairs. Compare your sentences with your partner. Are they the same? Then go back to p.101 and compare your sentences with the picture. Were you right?

5B THE FRIENDLIEST CITY Student A

a Read about what happened when Tim used the three tests in London. Try to remember the information.

London

The photo test
I was near Charring Cross station. I stopped a man who was walking pretty slowly down the street, and I said, "Excuse me, could you take my photo?" The man said, "No, no, no time for that," and just continued walking. Then I asked a business man in a gray suit who was walking toward the train station. He took one photo, but when I asked him to take another one, he walked away quickly.

The shopping test
I went to a souvenir store on Oxford Street, and I bought a key ring and a red bus. The red bus was very expensive. The total price was forty pounds. I gave the man a hundred pounds. He gave me sixty pounds back.

The accident test
For this test, I went down into the Tube (the London Underground). As I went down the stairs, I fell down and sat on the floor. A man immediately stopped and looked down at me. I thought he was going to help me, but he didn't—he just said, "Why don't you look where you're going?"

b In your own words, tell **B** and **C** what happened in London.

First, he used the photo test...

c Listen to **B** and **C** tell you what happened in Paris and Rome.

d Together decide which of the cities is the friendliest so far.

6B *I'LL* GAME Students A+B

Play the game.

6C DREAMS Student A

a Last night, you dreamed about these things. Prepare to tell **B** about your dream.

b **B** is a psychoanalyst. Tell him / her about your dream. He / she will tell you what it means.

Last night, I dreamed about a river...

c Change roles. Now you are a psychoanalyst. Listen to **B**'s dream. Number the things below in the order he / she talks about them.

- ☐ **Ice cream** – you will get some money (from the lottery or from a relative).
- ☐ **Long hair** – you want to be free. Maybe you have problems with your family or a partner.
- ☐ **A key** – you have a problem and you are looking for a solution.
- ☐ **People speaking other languages** – you think your life is boring and you would like to have a more exciting life.
- ☐ **Traveling by bus** – you are worried about a person who is controlling your life.

d Now use the information in **c** to interpret **B**'s dream.

Useful language
First, you dreamed about...
This tells me that...
This means you are going to...
This represents...

7A HOW TO... Student A

a Read the article **How to survive at a party**. Then without looking at the text, tell **B** the five tips. When you finish, decide with **B** which is the most important tip.

How to ... Survive at a Party (when you don't know anybody)

1. **Don't stand in the corner.** You need to be positive. Find somebody you think you would like to talk to and introduce yourself.
2. **Try to ask impersonal questions** like "I love your bag. Where did you get it?" This will help to start a conversation.
3. **Don't dominate the conversation.** When you are nervous, it's very easy to talk about yourself all the time. Nobody wants to listen to your life story when they have just met you for the first time.
4. **Smile!** Use your body language to give a positive, friendly impression.
5. **If you need to escape** from a really boring person, say that you are going to get a drink or that you need to go to the bathroom. Don't come back!

b **B** will tell you five tips for **How to survive a first date**. Listen, and when he or she finishes, decide together which is the most important tip.

8A WHAT SHOULD I DO? Student A

a Read problem 1 to **B**. He / she will give you some advice.

Problems
1 I don't know what to get my boyfriend / girlfriend for his / her birthday. It's tomorrow!
2 I have problems going to sleep at night.
3 My children want a dog, but my husband / wife is allergic to animals.
4 My neighbor's dog barks all the time, and it's driving me crazy!
5 My laptop isn't working well – it's very slow.

b Thank **B** and say:

That's a good idea.
OR Thanks, but that's not a very good idea because...

c Now listen to **B**'s problem 1. Give him / her advice. Begin with one of the phrases below.

I think you should... You shouldn't... I don't think you should...

d Continue with problems 2–5.

Communication

8C READING DIALOGUE Students A+B

a Work with a partner. First practice saying the names.

Hartley /ˈhɑrtli/ the Montgomerys /mɑnˈgʌmeriz/
Vivienne /ˈvɪviən/ Héloise /ɛluˈiz/

b Act out the dialogue. Use the adverbs in parentheses to help you, and remember to pause at the commas.

H (anxiously) Vivienne, you didn't answer my last letter. It took me a week to find your new address! Why didn't you answer me? You knew I was waiting to see you and hear from you.

V (slowly) Mr. Hartley, I don't know what to say to you. I understand all the advantages of your offer, and sometimes I feel sure that I could be happy with you. But then sometimes I am less sure. I was born a city girl, and I am not sure that I would enjoy living a quiet life in the suburbs.

H My dear girl, you will have everything that you want. You can come to the city for the theater, for shopping, and to visit your friends as often as you want. You can trust me, can't you?

V (seriously) I trust you completely. I know you are the kindest of men, and that the girl who you get will be very lucky. I heard all about you when I was at the Montgomerys'.

H Ah! I remember so well the evening I first saw you at the Montgomerys'. I will never forget that dinner. Come on, Vivienne, promise me. I want you. Nobody else will ever give you such a happy home.
(suspiciously) Tell me, Vivienne, is there – is there someone else?

V (defensively) You shouldn't ask that, Mr. Hartley. But I will tell you. There is one other person – but I haven't promised him anything.

H (masterfully) Vivienne, you must be mine.

V (calmly) Do you think for one moment that I could come to your home while Héloise is there?

c Change roles.

12A WHAT HAD HAPPENED? Student A

a Look at the odd numbered sentences (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, and 11) and think of the missing verb (⊞ = affirmative verb, ⊟ = negative verb). Don't write anything yet!

1 Diana was very angry because her husband _____ the dinner. ⊟
2 We went back to see the house where we **had lived** when we were children.
3 He couldn't catch the plane because he _____ his passport. ⊞
4 The house was very dirty because nobody **had cleaned** it for a long time.
5 We went back to the hotel where we _____ on our honeymoon. ⊞
6 The crocodile was hungry because it **hadn't eaten** anything for two days.
7 After I left the store, I suddenly remembered that I _____ for the jacket. ⊟
8 I ran to the train station, but the last train **had left.**
9 Naomi was surprised to hear that she _____ the exam. ⊞
10 I didn't want to lend Maria the book because I **hadn't read** it.
11 Jack was angry because I _____ him to my party. ⊟
12 They got to the movie theater late, and the movie **had started**.

b Read sentence 1 to **B**. If it's not right, try again until **B** tells you "That's right." Then write in the verb.

c Listen to **B** say sentence 2. If it's the same as 2 above, say "That's right." If not, say "Try again" until **B** gets it right.

d Continue taking turns with sentences 3–12.

9A WOULD YOU KNOW WHAT TO DO? Student A

a Read the answers to **In the city**.

b Tell **B** and **C** the right answers and why the other ones are wrong.

c Listen to **B** and **C** tell you about the other sections (**In the country** and **In the water**). Check your answers.

In the city

1 **The answer is b.** Dogs like to attack any part of you that is moving, usually hands or arms. It is also dangerous to turn your back on the dog. You shouldn't look the dog in its eyes because this will make him angry. Shouting "down" or "go away" at the dog will not work because dogs usually only react to their master's voice.

2 **The answer is a.** Bees will usually fly out of an open window, but don't wave your hands around as bees follow movement and might try to sting you. And you shouldn't hit the bee because this will make the bee very angry. Of course, as soon as you can you should stop the car and open the doors.

10A PASSIVES QUIZ Student A

a Complete your sentences with the verb in the passive and the right answer.

1 Until 1664 New York _____ (call)...
   a New Amsterdam
   b New Hampshire
   c New Liberty
2 The *Star Wars* movies _____ (direct) by...
   a George Lucas
   b Steven Spielberg
   c Stanley Kubrick
3 The noun that _____ (use) most frequently in conversation is...
   a money b time c work
4 Penguins _____ (find)...
   a at the South Pole
   b at the North Pole
   c in Alaska
5 The Italian flag _____ (design) by...
   a Garibaldi b Mussolini c Napoleon
6 The first cell phones _____ (sell) in...
   a 1963 b 1973 c 1983
7 The politician Winston Churchill _____ (born)...
   a on a train b in a restroom c under a bridge
8 The electric chair _____ (invent) by...
   a a teacher b a dentist c a politician

b Read your sentences to **B**. **B** will tell you if you are right.

c Now listen to **B**'s sentences. Say if he / she is right.

B's answers

1 The Smartphone was invented by IBM.
2 The *Lord of the Rings* movies were directed by Peter Jackson.
3 The book that is stolen most often from libraries is *The Guinness Book of Records*.
4 In the world, 16,000 babies are born every hour.
5 Chess was invented by the Chinese.
6 The first Levi jeans were worn by miners.
7 Soccer was first played by the British.
8 In 1962, the original London Bridge was bought by a rich American.

12C GENERAL KNOWLEDGE QUIZ Student A

a Complete your questions with the verb in parentheses in the simple past.

1 Who _____ the battle of Waterloo in 1815? (lose)
   a Duke of Wellington
   b Bismarck
   c **Napoleon**
2 Which Spanish actress _____ an Oscar in 2006? (win)
   a **Penelope Cruz**
   b Salma Hayek
   c Cameron Diaz
3 Who _____ the movie *Avatar*? (direct)
   a Steven Spielberg
   b **James Cameron**
   c Ridley Scott
4 Which Formula 1 driver _____ in 2007, but returned to racing in 2010? (retire)
   a Fernando Alonso
   b **Michael Schumacher**
   c Sebastian Vettel
5 Which Roman Emperor _____ "I came I saw I conquered?" (say)
   a Augustus b Nero c **Julius Caesar**
6 Who _____ the world record for the 100- and 200-meter race at the Beijing Olympics? (break)
   a **Usain Bolt**
   b Carl Lewis
   c Michael Johnson
7 Which painter _____ off part of his ear? (cut)
   a Picasso b **Van Gogh** c Matisse
8 Who _____ penicillin? (discover)
   a **Alexander Fleming**
   b James Watson
   c Thomas Edison

b Ask **B** your questions. Give your partner one point for each correct answer.

c Answer **B**'s questions. Who got the most right answers?

Communication

1A WHAT'S HIS NAME? HOW DO YOU SPELL IT? Student B

1 _____ Lee	2 Kieran _____	3 _____ Webb
4 Cally _____	5 _____ Scott	6 Michael _____

a Answer **A**'s questions.

b Ask **A** questions to complete the missing information.

Photo 1 – What's her first name? How do you spell it?

Asking for repetition
If you don't hear or understand somebody, you can say:
Sorry? Can you say that again? Can you repeat that?

1B ALEXANDER AND OLIVER Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions about Oliver.

Name	Alexander	Oliver
How old / ?		25
Where / from?		New York City
Where / live?		San Francisco
What / do?		engineer
What / like?		sports, music, good books and movies
What / not like?		dance clubs

b Ask **A** questions and complete the chart for Alexander.

1C DESCRIBE AND DRAW Student B

a Look at your painting for a minute.

b Listen to **A** describing his / her painting. Try to draw it. Don't look at it. Ask **A** questions to help you.

c Now describe your painting for **A** to draw.

d Compare your drawings with the original paintings. Are they similar?

2B *AT, IN, ON* Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions using *at*, *in*, or *on*. Ask *What about you?* for each question.

b Ask **A** your questions.

1 Where were you born?
2 What time do you usually get up during the week?
3 Where do you usually have lunch?
4 What time of day do you usually meet friends?
5 When do you usually go shopping?
6 Where do you usually do your English homework?
7 When do you do housework?
8 Where can you take a nice walk near where you live?

3A WHAT ARE YOUR PLANS? Student B

a Answer A's questions. Give more information.

b Ask **A** your questions using *going to*. Ask for more information.

- / you / go out this evening?
- What / you / have for dinner tonight?
- What / you / wear tomorrow?
- / you / go anywhere next weekend?
- What / you / do next summer?
- When / you / do your English homework?

3C WHAT'S THE WORD? Student B

a Look at the six words or phrases on your card. Think for a minute how you are going to define them.

a painting

generous

shorts

book a flight (*verb*)

Check-in

a nurse

b Listen to A's definitions. Try to guess the words.

c You have two minutes to communicate your words to **A**. Remember you can't use any part or form of the words on the card.

5B THE FRIENDLIEST CITY Student B

a Read about what happened when Tim used the three tests in Paris. Try to remember the information.

Paris

The photo test
I was standing in front of the Eiffel Tower and I asked some gardeners to take some photos of me. They couldn't stop laughing when they saw my hat, but they took the photos.

The shopping test
I bought some fruit in a grocery store. I gave the man a lot of euro coins and he carefully took the exact amount.

The accident test
I fell down in the Champs Elysées. The street was very busy, but after a minute someone stopped and said to me, "Are you OK?" He was Scottish!

b Listen to **A** tell you what happened in London.

c In your own words, tell **A** and **C** what happened in Paris.

First, he used the photo test...

d Listen to **C** tell you what happened in Rome.

e Together decide which of the cities is the friendliest so far.

7A HOW TO... Student B

a Read the article **How to survive a first date**.

b **A** will tell you five tips for **How to survive at a party**. Listen, and when he or she finishes, decide together which is the most important tip.

c Look again quickly at **How to survive a first date**. Then without looking at the text, tell **A** the five tips. When you finish, decide with **A** which is the most important tip.

How to ... Survive a First Date (and make a success of it)

1. **Think carefully about what to wear** for the date. If you are a man, try to dress stylishly but casually (no suits!). If you are a woman, it's important not to dress too suggestively. Don't wear too much perfume or aftershave!
2. **Choose a place that isn't too expensive** (you don't know who is going to pay). Try to go somewhere that isn't very noisy.
3. **Don't be too romantic** on a first date. For example, arriving with a red rose on a first date isn't a good idea!
4. **Remember to listen more than you talk,** but don't let the conversation die. Silence is a killer on a first date! Be natural. Don't pretend to be somebody you aren't.
5. **If you are a man,** be a gentleman and pay the check at the end of the evening. **If you are a woman,** offer to pay your half of the check (but don't insist!).

Communication

6C DREAMS Student B

a Last night you dreamed about these things. Prepare to tell **A** about your dream.

b You are a psychoanalyst. Listen to **A**'s dream. Number the things below in the order he / she talks about them.

- ☐ **Taking a bath** – you have a secret that nobody knows about.
- ☐ **Dogs** – you are looking for friends.
- ☐ **Losing hair** – you are going to lose some money.
- ☐ **Lost luggage** – a problem you have will soon get better.
- ☐ **A river** – you are going to be very lucky.

c Now use the information in **b** to interpret **A**'s dream.

Useful language
First, you dreamed about...
This tells me that...
This means you are going to...
This represents...

d Change roles. Now **A** is a psychoanalyst. Tell him / her about your dream. **A** will tell you what it means.

Last night, I dreamed about ice-cream...

8A WHAT SHOULD I DO? Student B

a Listen to **A**'s problem 1. Give him / her advice. Begin with one of the phrases below.

I think you should... You shouldn't... I don't think you should...

b Read your problem 1 to **A**. He / she will give you some advice.

Problems
1 I share an apartment with a friend, but he / she never does the dishes!
2 I want to take my boyfriend / girlfriend somewhere really special on Saturday night.
3 I need some new clothes for a wedding, but I don't know what to buy.
4 I think I'm getting a cold – I have a headache and a cough.
5 My sister always borrows my clothes, and when I want to wear them, they're dirty.

c Thank **A** and say:

That's a good idea.
OR Thanks, but that's not a very good idea because...

d Continue with problems 2–5.

9A WOULD YOU KNOW WHAT TO DO? Student B

a Read the answers to **In the country**.

In the country

3 **The answer is c.** If you tie a bandage or a piece of material above the bite, this will stop the poison from getting to your heart too quickly. However, be careful not to tie it too tightly. You shouldn't put ice or anything cold on the bite because this will make it more difficult to get the poison out later, and never try to suck out the poison. If it gets into your mouth, it might go into your blood.

4 **The answer is b.** If you are lucky, the bull will change direction to follow the hat or bag and give you time to escape. It doesn't matter what color the shirt is. Bulls don't see color—they only see movement. Don't try to run away because bulls can run incredibly fast, and you shouldn't shout or wave your arms because this will attract the bull's attention even more.

b Listen to **A** tell you about **In the city**. Check your answers.

c Tell **A** and **C** the right answers for **In the country** and why the other ones are wrong.

d Listen to **C** tell you about **In the water**. Check your answers.

10A PASSIVES QUIZ Student B

a Complete your sentences with the verb in the passive and the right answer.

1 The Smartphone _____ (invent) by...
a Apple b Nokia c IBM

2 The *Lord of the Rings movies* _____ (direct) by...
a Steven Spielberg
b James Cameron
c Peter Jackson

3 The book that _____ (steal) most often from libraries is...
a The Bible
b *The Guinness Book of Records*
c *The Lord of the Rings*

4 In the world, 16,000 babies _____ (born)...
a every second b every hour c every day

5 Chess _____ (invent) by...
a the Egyptians b the Indians c the Chinese

6 The first Levi jeans _____ (wear) by...
a miners b farmers c cowboys

7 Soccer _____ first _____ (play) by...
a the British b the Romans c the Greeks

8 In 1962, the original London Bridge _____ (buy) by...
a a rich American
b a museum
c the Royal family

b Listen to **A**'s sentences. Say if he / she is right.

A's answers

1 Until 1664 New York was called New Amsterdam.
2 The *Star Wars* movies were directed by George Lucas.
3 The noun that is used most frequently in conversation is *time*.
4 Penguins are found at the South Pole.
5 The Italian flag was designed by Napoleon.
6 The first cell phones were sold in 1983.
7 The politician Winston Churchill was born in a restroom.
8 The electric chair was invented by a dentist.

c Read your sentences to **A**. **A** will tell you if you are right.

12A WHAT HAD HAPPENED? Student B

a Look at the even numbered sentences (2, 4, 6, 8, 10, and 12) and think of the missing verb (⊞ = affirmative verb, ⊟ = negative verb). Don't write anything yet!

1 Diana was very angry because her husband **hadn't cooked** the dinner.
2 We went back to see the house where we _____ when we were children. ⊞
3 He couldn't catch the plane because he **had forgotten** his passport.
4 The house was very dirty because nobody _____ it for a long time. ⊞
5 We went back to the hotel where we **had stayed** on our honeymoon.
6 The crocodile was hungry because it _____ anything for two days. ⊟
7 After I left the store, I suddenly remembered that I **hadn't paid** for the jacket.
8 I ran to the train station, but the last train _____. ⊞
9 Naomi was surprised to hear that she **had passed** the exam.
10 I didn't want to lend Maria the book because I _____ it. ⊟
11 Jack was angry because I **hadn't invited** him to my party.
12 They got to the movie theater late, and the movie _____. ⊞

b Listen to **A** say sentence 1. If it's the same as 1 above, say "That's right." If not, say "Try again" until **A** gets it right.

c Read sentence 2 to **A**. If it's not right, try again until **A** tells you "That's right." Then write in the verb.

d Continue taking turns with sentences 3–12.

2C SAD ENDING

1 Why didn't Hannah see the man who was crossing the street?
2 What happened?
3 Where did she go then and what did she do?
4 Who arrived at her house two hours later?
5 What news did she have for Hannah?
6 How was Jamie?
7 What did she tell Hannah about the car and the driver?
8 What happened in the end?

Communication

12C GENERAL KNOWLEDGE QUIZ Student B

a Complete your questions with the verb in parentheses in the simple past.

1 Who _____ President of the US eight years after his father had been the US president? (become)
   a Bill Clinton
   b John F. Kennedy
   c **George Bush**

2 Who _____ the part of the mother in the movie *Mamma Mia*? (play)
   a **Meryl Streep**
   b Julia Roberts
   c Sandra Bullock

3 Which tennis player _____ Wimbledon five years in a row between 2003 and 2007? (win)
   a **Roger Federer**
   b Rafael Nadal
   c Novak Djokovic

4 Who _____ the Sistine Chapel? (paint)
   a Leonardo da Vinci
   b **Michelangelo**
   c Raphael

5 Which movie _____ eleven Oscars in 2003? (win)
   a *The King's Speech*
   b *The Queen*
   c ***The Return of the King***

6 Who _____ a wooden horse to enter the city of Troy? (use)
   a **the Greeks**
   b the Romans
   c the Persians

7 Which famous boxer _____ to fight in the Vietnam war in 1967? (refuse)
   a **Muhammad Ali**
   b Joe Frazier
   c Sugar Ray Robinson

8 Who _____ the telephone? (invent)
   a Marconi b **Bell** c Stephens

b Answer **A**'s questions.

c Ask **A** your questions. Give your partner one point for each correct answer. Who got the most right answers?

5B THE FRIENDLIEST CITY Student C

a Read about what happened when Tim used the three tests in Rome. Try to remember the information.

Rome

The photo test
I asked a very chic woman who was wearing sunglasses to take some photos. She took a photo of me with my hat on and then without my hat. Then another photo with my sunglasses. Then she asked me to take a photo of her!

The shopping test
I bought a newspaper from a newstand near the train station. It was three euros. I gave the man four euros, and he didn't give me any change.

The accident test
I went to a busy street near the train station. When I fell down, about eight people immediately hurried to help me.

b Listen to **A** and **B** tell you what happened in London and Paris.

c In your own words, tell **A** and **B** what happened in Rome.

First, he used the photo test...

d Together decide which of the cities is the friendliest so far.

9A WOULD YOU KNOW WHAT TO DO? Student C

a Read the answers to **In the water**.

In the water

5 **The answer is c.** If a jellyfish stings you, you should clean the sting with vinegar because this stops the poison. If you don't have any vinegar, use ocean water. But don't use fresh water, for example water from a tap or mineral water, because this will make the sting hurt more. And you shouldn't rub the sting because this will make it worse, too. After you have washed the sting, you should clean off any bits of tentacles that are on your skin. And take a pain killer!

6 **The answer is a.** If you are near the shore and the shark is not too close, you can probably swim to the shore without attracting its attention. For this reason it is important to swim smoothly and not splash or make sudden movements. Keeping still is dangerous because if the shark swims in your direction, it will see you and it will attack you. Don't shout because shouting will provoke the shark and it will attack you.

b Listen to **A** and **B** tell you the answers in the other sections (**In the city** and **In the country**). Check your answers.

c Tell **A** and **B** the right answers for **In the water** and why the other ones are wrong.

Writing

1 DESCRIBING A PERSON

a Read Charlie's email. The computer has found ten mistakes. They are grammar, punctuation, or spelling mistakes. Can you correct them?

From: Charlie [barcacarlos@hotmail.com]
To: Lucy [lucyathome1989@yahoo.com]
Subject: Hi from Mexico

Hi Lucy,

My name's Charlie. Well, it's really Carlos, but everyone calls me Charlie. I'm from Mexico City, and I live at home with my parents and my dog. I have 21 years old, and I'm in college. I'm studing physics. I'm in my last year, and I really like it.

I'm going to tell you about myself. As you can see from the foto, I have black hair and browns eyes. My father always says I have a big nose, but I don't think so, I think it's a nice nose!

I think I'm a positive person. My freinds say I'm funny and it's true. I like making people laugh. But I can to be serious too when I need to be!

I dont have many free time becuase when I'm not in class, I have to do projects or write reports. But when I can, I like watching TV series, especially science fiction series and comedies. I watch them in english with subtitles. I also like playing computer games like *World of Warcraft* and *Starcraft*.

Please write soon and tell me about you and your life.

Best wishes,

Charlie

b Read the email again from the beginning. Then cover it and answer the questions from memory.

1 Where's Charlie from?
2 What's his real name?
3 Who does he live with?
4 What does he do?
5 What does he look like?
6 What's he like?
7 What are his favorite free-time activities?

c Write a similar email about you or a person you know. Write four paragraphs.

Paragraph 1	name, nationality, age, family, work / study
Paragraph 2	physical appearance
Paragraph 3	personality
Paragraph 4	hobbies and interests

d Check your email for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).

◀ p.7

Writing

2 MY FAVORITE PHOTO

MY FAVORITE PHOTO BLOG

POST YOUR FAVORITE PHOTO ON THE WEBSITE, TOGETHER WITH A SHORT DESCRIPTION OF WHY THE PHOTO IS IMPORTANT TO YOU.

This week's winner is Erica, a student in Denver, Colorado.

1 One of favorite photos is this one of me and my sister, Christy.

2 My dad took the photo _____ the spring of 2011 when we were _____ vacation with our family _____ New York City.

3 We were at a place called Bryant Park. It's a pretty famous park behind the New York City Public Library _____ midtown Manhattan. We were standing in front of the Josephine Shaw Memorial Fountain, throwing coins in the water and making wishes. My dad was telling us all about the history of the fountain—it was the first fountain in New York City dedicated to a woman. When my dad took the photo, my sister and I were just jumping and running _____ the fountain and being silly.

4 I love this photo because it's happy, and it reminds me of a great day in the city.

5 I have the photo _____ a frame and _____ my computer with other photos _____ New York City.

a Match the questions with paragraphs 1–5.

- [ ] **What was happeing when you took the photo?**
- [ ] **Where do you keep it?**
- [ ] **Why do you like it?**
- [ ] **What's your favorite photo?**
- [ ] **Who took it? When? Where?**

b Complete the text with *in*, *of*, *on*, or *around*.

You can keep a photo...

in	an album.	**on**	the wall.	**by**	your bed.
	your wallet.		a table.		
	your bedroom.		your phone.		
	a frame.		your computer.		

c Write about your favorite photo. Answer the questions in **a** in the right order.

d Check your description for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling). Attach a copy of the photo if you can. Show your description to another student. Is the photo similar in any way to yours?

◀ p.15

3 AN INFORMAL EMAIL

a Omar is a student from Peru who's going to study English in the US. He's going to stay with a family. Read the email from Mrs. Barnes and complete it with expressions from the list.

Best wishes Dear Omar
P.S. Looking forward to hearing from you

b Read the email again and answer the questions.

1 When is Omar coming to the US?
2 How is he traveling?
3 Who is going to meet him at the airport?
4 Does Omar have to share a room?
5 Does *Looking forward to hearing from you* mean...?
   a I hope you write again soon.
   b I'm going to write to you again soon.
6 Does *P.S.* mean...?
   a This isn't very important information.
   b I forgot to say this before.
7 Why does Mrs. Barnes send Omar a photo?

c Imagine you are going to stay with Mrs. Barnes. Answer her email using your own information. Write three paragraphs. End the email with *Best wishes* and your name.

Paragraph 1	Thank her for her email.
Paragraph 2	Say when you are arriving, etc.
Paragraph 3	Answer her other questions.

d Check your email for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).

◀ p.23

From: Emily Barnes [Barnes@hotmail.com]
To: Kerem [omarespinosa@yahoo.com]
Subject: Your trip

1 _____ ,

Thank you for your email. We're very happy that you're coming to stay with us this summer, and we're sure you're going to enjoy your stay with us.

What time are you arriving at Newark Airport? If you send us your flight number and arrival time, we can all meet you in the arrivals area. Can you send us your cell phone number, too?

Could you also give us some other information? What day are you going back to Peru? Is there anything you can't eat or drink? Do you want your own room, or would you like to share a room with another student? Is there anything special you would like to do or see in the US?

2 _____ .

3 _____ ,

Emily Barnes

4 _____ I'm attaching a photo of the family so you can recognize us at the airport!

Writing

4 DESCRIBING WHERE YOU LIVE

a Read the text and complete it with these words.

area city food historic modern
nature population rivers weather

b Match the questions with paragraphs 1–5.

- [ ] What's it famous for?
- [ ] What's the weather like?
- [ ] What's the best thing about it? Do you like living there?
- [ ] What's your hometown like? What is there to see there?
- [ ] Where do you live? Where is it? How big is it?

c Write a description of the place where you live. Write five paragraphs. Answer the questions in **b** in the right order. First, make notes on the questions in **b**.

d Check your email for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling). Show your description to other students in your class. Which place that you read about would you most like to visit?

◀ p.39

THE PLACE WHERE I LIVE

1 I live in Kayseri, which is an important [1]*city* in Central Anatolia in Turkey. It has a [2]_____ of over 1,000,000 people. It's near the famous Cappadocia [3]_____, so there are a lot of tourists in the summer.

2 Kayseri is one of the richest cities in Turkey because it has a lot of industry. It is a university town, and there are also many [4]_____ buildings, for example Kayseri Castle, Hunat Hatun Mosque, and the Grand Bazaar around Cumhuriyet Square, with its famous statue of Ataturk. But Kayseri also has [5]_____ residential areas full of luxury apartment buildings, shopping malls, and stylish restaurants.

3 The [6]_____ in Kayseri is typical of the Middle Anatolia region. Winters are cold and snowy – great for skiing – and summers are hot and dry. It sometimes rains in the spring and fall.

4 Kayseri is famous for its mountains. Mount Erciyes is the symbol of the city and it has a well-known ski resort, and on Mount Ali there are national and international paragliding championships. It's also famous for its [7]_____ and has many local specialities like *pastirma*, which is dried beef with spices, and *manti*, which is a kind of Turkish ravioli. They're delicious!

5 What I like best about Kayseri is that we are so close to [8]_____. When I'm tired of city life, I can easily get out and enjoy the mountains, [9]_____, waterfalls, and thermal spas, which are only a short distance away.

5 A FORMAL EMAIL

From: Ryou Yamada [yamadar998@yahoo.co.jp]
To: Beacon Intensive Language School [info@BILS.edu]
Subject: Information about courses

Dear Sir / Madam,

I am writing to ask for information about your language courses. I am especially interested in an intensive course of two or three weeks. I am 31, and I work in the library at the University of Tokyo. I can read English quite well, but I need to improve my listening and speaking.

I have looked at your website, but there is no information about intensive courses next summer. Could you please send me information about dates and prices? I would also like some information about accommodations. If possible, I would like to stay with a family. My wife is going to visit me for a weekend when I am at the school. Could she stay with me at the same family's home?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Sincerely,

Ryou Yamada

a Read the email to a language school. Check (✓) the questions that Ryou wants the school to answer.

- ☐ How much do the courses cost?
- ☐ When do the courses start and end?
- ☐ How many students are there in a class?
- ☐ Are there business English classes?
- ☐ Where can I stay?
- ☐ Where are the teachers from?

b Look at the highlighted expressions. How would they be different in an informal email (or letter)?

Formal	Informal
Dear Sir / Madam,	
I am writing	
I would like	
I look forward to hearing from you.	
Sincerely,	

c Read the advertisements and choose a course. Think of two or three questions you would like to ask.

d Write a formal email asking for information. Write two paragraphs.

Paragraph 1	Explain why you are writing, and give some personal information.
Paragraph 2	Ask your questions, and ask them to send you information.

e Check your email for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling).

◀ p.57

Writing

6 A BIOGRAPHY

a Read the biography of Norah Jones. Then cover the text and try to remember three things about her.

b Put the verbs in parentheses in the simple past or present perfect.

Writing a biography – use of tenses

If you write a biography of a person who is dead, the verbs will all be in the **simple past**.

If the person is alive, all finished actions will be in the **simple past** (such as the person's early life, *e.g., was born, went to college*, etc., or specific actions in their life, e.g., *got married, moved to another town*, etc.).

However, you must use the **present perfect** for unfinished actions that started in the past and are still true now (and which might change), e.g., *She has won nine Grammy awards. She has appeared in several movies.*

Use the **simple present** (or **present continuous**) to talk about the present day, e.g., *She lives in New York. She's working on a new album.*

c Write a biography of someone you know, or of a famous person, who is still alive. Write three paragraphs. Make notes before you begin.

Paragraph 1	where and when they were born, their early life (simple past)
Paragraph 2	their life as a young adult (mostly simple past)
Paragraph 3	their later life and their life now (simple past, present perfect, simple present / present continuous)

d Check your biography for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling). Show your biography to other students in the class. Which of your classmates' biographies is the most interesting?

◀ p.73

Norah Jones

Norah Jones is an American singer-songwriter and actress. She [1] *was born* (**be born**) in 1979 in New York City. Her father is Ravi Shankar, a famous Indian sitar player, and her mother is the concert producer Sue Jones. In 1986, her parents [2] _____ (**separate**) and later got divorced, and Norah went to live in Texas with her mother.

Norah [3] _____ (**be**) interested in music all her life. When she was young, she played the saxophone and she was in two different choirs. She [4] _____ (**go**) to the University of North Texas to study jazz piano, and while she was there she [5] _____ (**meet**) Jesse Harris. She started a band with him a year later, and since then they [6] _____ (**work**) together on many different projects.

In 1999, she [7] _____ (**move**) to New York City, and in 2001 she signed a contract with Blue Note Records. Since then she [8] _____ (**make**) five albums, and they have all been very successful. She [9] _____ (**win**) nine Grammy awards and has sold over 37 million albums worldwide. She has also appeared in several movies, including *My Blueberry Nights*.

She has been in only one relationship, with Lee Alexander, but they [10] _____ (**break up**) in 2007. She still lives in New York. Right now she is working on a new album.

7 AN OPINION ESSAY

a Read the article once. Do you agree with what it says?

"THERE ARE TOO MANY SPORTS SHOWS ON TV."

DO YOU AGREE?

Every time I turn on the television, I'm sure to find a sports show on one of the channels. If I change channels, there will probably be a sports show or a sports report on other channels, too, especially on the weekend. [1]*In my opinion* there are definitely too many sports shows on TV for the following reasons.

[2]_____, if you compare sports with other TV shows, sports completely dominate. The only time you can watch talk shows or game shows or soap operas is on weekday mornings or afternoons. This is not fair to people who like other kinds of TV shows, [3]_____ dramas, politcal shows, or documentaries.

Secondly, the sports shows on TV are not only the important games. Every week they show boring games from college and even high school divisions.

[4]_____, I also believe that, on the weekend, most people want to relax in front of the television. Many people, including me, don't like sports, and prefer to see good movies or funny comedy shows.

[5]_____, I think that even on news programs there is too much information about sports. It is very annoying when they talk about sports for hours every day, especially when there are more important things happening in the world.

[6]_____, I think TV should show fewer sports shows, especially on the weekend. [7]_____ it should show other kinds of shows and more movies. On news programs they should talk about important things that are happening in the world, not about sports.

b Read the article again and complete the blanks with a word or phrase from the list. Use capital letters where necessary.

finally	firstly	for example	thirdly
in my opinion	instead	to conclude	

c You are going to write an article called **"There are too many reality shows on TV". Do you agree?** With a partner decide if you agree or not, and think of three of four reasons.

d Write the article. Write four or five paragraphs.

Paragraph 1	Write an introduction. You can adapt the introduction in the model article. Say if you agree or not.
Middle paragraphs	Give your reasons. Begin the paragraphs with *Firstly, Secondly, (Thirdly,)* and *Finally.*
Last paragraph	Write a conclusion (this should be a summary of what you write in the middle paragraphs).

e Check your article for mistakes (grammar, punctuation, and spelling). Show your article to other students in the class. How many of your classmates agree with you? How many disagree?

◀ p.85

Listening

1.14

My first impression of Alexander was that he was much older than me. In fact, he was 32, but I thought he was older. But when we started talking, I really liked him. He was extroverted and funny, and he had a very good sense of humor. He works for a TV station, and he told me a lot of good stories about his work. He was also interested in the same things as me – art and music, and we talked a lot about that. Physically he wasn't really my type. It's hard to say why. He was tall and dark and very good-looking, and he had a nice smile but there just wasn't any chemistry between us. I could imagine going to a concert or the theater with him, but as a friend. Sorry Mom, but no.

1.15

When I first saw Oliver I thought he looked warm and friendly, and more attractive than Alexander. He was tall with short blond hair, and he had amazing blue eyes, kind of like the actor Ryan Gosling. He was kind of shy and quiet at first but when we started talking he relaxed, and we found we had a lot of things in common – we both like books and movies. He was generous, too – he wanted to pay for everything. I really enjoyed the evening. When it was time to go, he asked for my phone number and said he wanted to meet again. We walked out of the restaurant and went to look for a taxi. And then something happened, and I knew that it was impossible for me to go out with him. He said "Finally!" and took out a pack of cigarettes. That was it. I could never have a boyfriend who was a smoker. I think maybe for my next date I'm going to choose the man myself. I don't think another person can really choose a partner for you.

1.24

Mr and Mrs Clark and Percy is by artist David Hockney, and it's considered to be one of the greatest British paintings of the 20th century. It was painted in 1971, and it's a portrait of two of his friends, Ossie Clark and his wife Celia, and their cat Percy. Ossie Clark and Celia were fashion designers, and they had a very successful clothes store in London. In the 1960s, they dressed a lot of the famous pop stars of the time, including The Rolling Stones and Eric Clapton.

Hockney painted Ossie and Celia a few months after they got married in their apartment at Notting Hill in London. He painted them in their bedroom because he liked the light there, and on the wall on the left of the window you can see one of his own paintings.

Mr and Mrs Clark and Percy is a very big painting, approximately 9 feet, 10 inches wide and 6 feet, 7 inches high. The couple is wearing typical clothes of the late 1960s. Celia is wearing a long dress, and in fact she was expecting a baby at that time. Her husband isn't wearing any shoes, and he's putting his feet into the rug. This was because Hockney had a lot of problems painting his feet. He just couldn't get them right.

Hockney said that his aim with this painting was to paint the relationship between the two people. Traditionally, when a painter paints a married couple the woman is sitting down and the man is standing up. In this painting, the man is sitting and the woman is standing. Usually in a painting the married couple is close together, but in this painting they are separated by a big open window which symbolizes the distance between them. The white cat, sitting on Mr. Clark, is a symbol of infidelity. It seems that Hockney didn't think that their marriage was going to be very happy, and in fact, the couple got divorced four years later.

Celia often posed as a model for Hockney, but she says that this painting, his most famous picture of her, is not her favorite. She said, "It's a wonderful painting, but it makes me look too heavy." In 1996, twenty five years after this picture was painted, Ossie Clark died. He was murdered by his lover in his Kensington apartment.

1.26

My name's Jenny Zielinski. I live and work in New York. I'm the assistant editor of a magazine called *NewYork24seven*. A few months ago, I visited our office in London to learn more about the company. I met the manager, Daniel O'Connor. I had lots of meetings with him, of course. And a working dinner on my birthday... But I spent more time with Rob Walker. He's one of the writers on the London magazine. We had coffees together. We went sightseeing. I even helped Rob buy a shirt! He was fun to be with. I liked him a lot. I think he liked me, too. Rob isn't the most punctual person in the world, but he is a great writer. We invited him to work for the New York magazine for a month... and he agreed! So now Rob's coming to New York. I know he's really excited about it. It's going to be great to see him again.

1.29

Jenny So, here you are in New York at last.
Rob Yeah, it's great to be here. It's really exciting.
Jenny And how's your hotel?
Rob It's fine. My room is really...nice.
Jenny Do you have a good view from your room?
Rob I can see lots of other buildings.
Jenny Tomorrow I'm going to show you around the office and introduce you to the team. Barbara's looking forward to meeting you. You remember, Barbara, my boss?
Rob Oh...yeah, sorry.
Jenny And then you can start thinking about your blog and the column. Have you got any ideas yet, Rob? ... Rob?
Rob What? Sorry, Jenny.
Jenny You must be really tired.
Rob Yes, I am a bit. What time is it now?
Jenny It's nine o'clock.
Rob Nine o'clock? That's two o'clock in the morning for me.
Jenny Let's finish our drinks. You need to go to bed.
Rob I guess you're right.
Jenny So, I'll see you in the office at eleven in the morning.
Rob At eleven?
Jenny Is that OK?
Rob It's perfect. Thanks, Jenny.
Jenny There's just one thing.
Rob What's that?
Jenny Don't be late.
Rob By the way, It's great to see you again.
Jenny Yeah. It's great to see you, too.

1.34

Mia It was a really terrible vacation. It was my fault, I mean I wanted to go to Thailand, but I knew before I went that I didn't really want to have a serious relationship with Joe. And the vacation just showed how different we are. He irritated me all the time. He wanted to stay in some really cheap hostels because he thought the hotels were too expensive. I didn't want 5-star luxury, but when I go on vacation I want to be comfortable. The places where Joe wanted to stay were very basic and had very small rooms. There's nothing worse than being in a very small room with someone when you're not getting along very well. Another thing I didn't like was that Joe got very jealous. When you're traveling, part of the fun is talking to other travelers, but he hated it if I talked to other people, especially other men. And then he kept taking photos! Hundreds of them. Every time we saw a monument he said, "Go and stand over there so I can take a photo." I hate being in photos. I just wanted to enjoy the sights. The vacation was all a big mistake. Never go on vacation with a boyfriend if you're not sure about the relationship. It's sure to be a disaster!

1.35

Linda Oh, it was a wonderful vacation. I loved every minute! Costa Rica is just a paradise. We did everything – we went on a zipline tour, we did all kinds of fun nature activities, and we had some amazing meals. And you know, everyone says that Costa Rica is expensive, but I didn't think it was – it wasn't an expensive vacation at all. I thought it was pretty reasonable. We all got along very well. I think I'm going to suggest to Isabelle and Laura that we go on vacation together again next year...

1.44

In May 1968, I came back to Paris. It was a very exciting time. There were a lot of demonstrations and fighting between students and the police. I wasn't really interested in politics – I wasn't a communist or an anarchist. But I loved the atmosphere. All the students were fighting for freedom, for revolution, and the French police were everywhere. On May the 15th, I was with thousands of other young people. We were walking toward the Place de la Bastille. I was tired, so a friend picked me up and I sat on his shoulders. Another boy who was walking next to us was carrying a Vietnamese flag (it was the time of the Vietnam war) and he said to me, "Hey, could you carry the flag for me?" and I said OK. There was so much happening that I didn't notice all the photographers. The next day the photo was on the cover of magazines all over the world. When my grandfather saw it, he immediately ordered me to come to his house. He was furious – really really angry. He said, "That's it! You're a communist! I'm not going to leave you anything. Not a penny!" I walked out of the room, and I never saw him again. Six months later he died, and I didn't get any money from him. Nothing.

1.50

Happy ending

Narrator Suddenly, a man ran across the street. He was wearing a dark coat so Hannah didn't see him at first. Quickly she put her foot on the brake. She stopped just in time. She got out of her car and shouted at the man.
Hannah Don't you usually look before you cross the street? I almost hit you. I didn't see you until the last minute.
Jamie Sorry! Hey, Hannah, it's me. It's Jamie.
Hannah Jamie! What are you doing here? I almost killed you!
Jamie I was buying something. I was in a hurry, and I crossed the street without looking.
Hannah Come on. Get in!
Narrator Hannah and Jamie drove to the coffee shop. They sat down in their usual seats and ordered two cups of coffee.

Waiter Here you are. Two cappuccinos.
Hannah / Jamie Thanks.
Hannah What an evening! I almost killed you.
Jamie Well, you didn't kill me, so what's the problem?
Hannah But what were you doing on Bridge Street? I thought you were here, in the cafe, waiting for me.
Jamie I went to the theater to buy these tickets for the Scouting For Girls concert. I know you wanted to go. And it's on the October 15th – next Saturday. Our anniversary.
Hannah Our anniversary?
Jamie Yes. Three months since we first met. We met on Saturday, July 15th. Remember?
Hannah Gosh, Jamie. I can't believe you remember the exact day! What a romantic! It's lucky I didn't hit you on the street...

1 51

Sad ending
Narrator Suddenly, a man ran across the street. He was wearing a dark coat so Hannah didn't see him at first. Quickly she put her foot on the brake. Although Hannah tried to stop she couldn't. She hit the man. Hannah panicked. She drove away as fast as she could. When she arrived at the coffee shop, Jamie wasn't there. She called him but his cell phone was turned off. She waited for ten minutes and then she went home. Two hours later a car arrived at Hannah's house. A police officer knocked at the door.
Police officer Good evening, ma'am. Are you Hannah Davis?
Hannah Yes, I am.
Police officer I'd like to speak to you. Can I come in?
Narrator The police officer came in and sat down on the sofa.
Police officer Are you a friend of Jamie Dixon?
Hannah Yes,
Narrator said Hannah.
Police officer Well, I'm afraid I have some bad news for you.
Hannah What? What's happened?
Police officer Jamie had an accident this evening.
Hannah Oh no! What kind of accident?
Police officer He was crossing the street and a car hit him.
Hannah When...When did this happen? And where?
Police officer This evening at 5:25. He was crossing Bridge Street by the theater.
Hannah Oh, no! How is he?
Police officer He's in the hospital. He has a bad injury to his head and two broken legs.
Hannah But is he going to be OK?
Police officer We don't know. He's in intensive care.
Hannah Oh, no. And the driver of the car?
Police officer She didn't stop.
Hannah She?
Police officer Yes, it was a woman in a white car. Somebody saw the car's license plates. You have a white car outside don't you, ma'am? Is your number plate XYZ 348S?
Hannah Yes...yes, it is.
Police officer Can you tell me where you were at 5:25 this evening?

1 55

Olivia
Interviewer Excuse me, do you have a minute?
Olivia Yes, sure.
Interviewer Where are you going?
Olivia To Nicaragua.
Interviewer For a vacation?
Olivia No, I'm going to do volunteer work. I'm going to teach English to young children.
Interviewer Where exactly in Nicaragua are you going?
Olivia To a town called Esteli. It's about 93 miles from Managua.
Interviewer How long are you going to be there for?
Olivia I'm going to be in Esteli for six weeks, and after that I'm going to travel around Nicaragua for a month.
Interviewer That sounds amazing.
Olivia Yes, I'm really looking forward to it.
Interviewer Are you feeling nervous at all?
Olivia A little, because I don't speak much Spanish. But they're going to give us a 40-hour language course when we arrive, so I hope that's enough to start with.
Interviewer Well, good luck and have a great time.
Olivia Thanks. I'm sure it's going to be an amazing experience.

Matthew
Interviewer Excuse me, do you have a minute?
Matthew Yeah, OK.
Interviewer Where are you going?
Matthew To Australia.
Interviewer That's a long flight. Are you going to stop on the way?
Matthew No, I'm going direct to Melbourne.
Interviewer Why Melbourne?
Matthew I'm going to work there. I'm a model and we're going to do a photo shoot for a magazine.
Interviewer That sounds exciting. What kind of clothes are you going to model?
Matthew Winter clothes, for next season. It's winter in Australia now, so it's going to be pretty cold. That's why we're going there.
Interviewer Of course, it's their winter. How cold do you think it's going to be?
Matthew I'm not really sure. About 45 to 50 degrees Farhenheit during the day and colder at night, I suppose.
Interviewer Well, have a good trip, and I hope the photos are fabulous!
Matthew Thanks.

Lily
Interviewer Excuse me, do you have a minute?
Lily OK, sure.
Interviewer Where are you going?
Lily To San Francisco.
Interviewer Why are you going there?
Lily I'm going to a conference.
Interviewer So it's a work trip.
Lily Yes. But I'm also going to see an old friend there. Actually, an old boyfriend. Someone I went out with a long time ago.
Interviewer When did you decide to meet up again?
Lily Well, I knew he was working at the University of San Francisco, so when the conference came up about a month ago I got in touch with him on Facebook.
Interviewer Is he going to meet you at the airport?
Lily I don't think so! But who knows?
Interviewer How do you feel about it?
Lily Pretty excited. It's going to be strange meeting again after all these years.
Interviewer Well, good luck. I'm sure you're going to have a great time. And enjoy the conference, too.
Lily Thank you very much.

1 62

Ben Hi. This is Ben West. Sorry I can't take your call. Please leave a message.
Lily Hi Ben. It's me, Lily. Hope you're OK. I've booked my flight and hotel. I'm coming on Sunday May 2nd – I couldn't get a flight on the first. I'm flying from Boston on JetBlue, and I'm arriving in San Francisco at 2:40 p.m. I'm going back on Saturday the 8th leaving at 12:35 p.m. I'm staying at a hotel near the convention center. It's called the Hotel Nikko or Nekko – I'm not sure how you pronounce it, but it's N-I-K-K-O. I'm sure you know it. I'll call you on Sunday night when I get there. See you soon – I'm really looking forward to seeing you again.

2 2

Host Good evening, ladies and gentlemen and welcome to *What's the Word?* And our first contestants tonight are Martin and Lola. Hello to you both. Are you nervous?
Lola Just a little.
Host Well, just try and relax and play *What's the Word?* with us. If you're watching the show for the first time, here's how we play the game. As you can see, Martin has a TV screen in front of him and six words are going to appear on the screen. Martin has two minutes to describe the words to Lola so that she can guess what they are. But he can't use any part of the words on the screen. So, for example, if the word is taxi driver, he can't use the word taxi or driver or drive.
Host Martin, Lola, are you ready?

2 3

Host Martin, Lola, are you ready?
Martin/Lola Yes.
Host OK, Martin you have two minutes to describe your six words starting now!
Martin OK, word number 1. It's a person. It's somebody who works in a hospital.
Lola A doctor.
Martin No, no, no...it's the person who helps the doctor and takes care of the patients.
Lola Oh, a [*bleep*].
Martin That's right. Word number 2. It's a place. It's somewhere where people go when they want to buy things.
Lola A store.
Martin Not exactly. It's bigger and you can buy all kinds of different things there, especially food.
Lola A [*bleep*]?
Martin Yes, good job. OK, word number 3. It's a thing. It's something that we use for everything nowadays. For the Internet, for talking to people, for taking photos...It's a kind of gadget. Everyone has one.
Lola A [*bleep*]?
Martin That's it! Word number 4. It's an adjective. It's the opposite of dark.
Lola Light?
Martin It's like light, but you only use it to describe hair.
Lola [*bleep*]?
Martin Yes! Word number 5. It's an adjective again. Uh...You use it to describe a person who's ... Uh, who's quick at learning things.
Lola Intelligent?
Martin No, but it's similar to intelligent. It's the opposite of stupid.
Lola [*bleep*]!
Martin Yes, right. And word number six, the last one. OK. It's a verb. For example, you do this to the TV.
Lola Watch?
Martin No... It's what you do when you finish watching TV at night.
Lola Uh...go to bed?
Martin No! Come on! You do it to the TV before you go to bed.
Lola Oh, [*bleep*]?
Martin Yes!

2 8

Jenny Well, I think that's everything. What do you think of the office?
Rob It's brilliant. And much bigger than our place in London.
Jenny Oh, here's Barbara. Rob, this is Barbara, the editor of the magazine.
Barbara It's good to finally meet you, Rob.
Rob It's great to be here.
Barbara Is this your first time in New York?
Rob No, I came here when I was eighteen. But only for a few days.
Barbara Well, I hope you get to know New York much better this time!
Jenny Barbara, I'm going to take Rob out for lunch. Would you like to come with us?
Barbara I'd love to, but unfortunately I have a meeting at one. So, I'll see you later. We're meeting at three, I think.
Jenny That's right.
Barbara Have a nice lunch.
Holly Hey, are you Rob Walker?
Rob Yes.

Holly Hi, I'm Holly. Holly Tyler.
Rob Hello, Holly.
Holly We're going to be working together.
Jenny Really?
Holly Didn't Barbara tell you? I'm going to be Rob's photographer!
Jenny Oh, well...We're just going for lunch.
Holly Cool! I can come with you. I mean, I had a sandwich earlier, so I don't need to eat. But Rob and I can talk. Is that OK?
Jenny Sure.
Holly So let's go.

2.11

Holly So tell me, Rob. What are you going to write about?
Rob Well, to start with, my first impressions of New York. You know, the nightlife, the music, things like that.
Holly Are you planning to do any interviews?
Rob I'd like to. Do you have any suggestions?
Holly Well, I know some great musicians.
Rob Musicians?
Holly You know, guys in bands. And I also have some contacts in the theater and dance.
Rob That would be great.
Holly Maybe we could go to a show, and after you could talk to the actors.
Rob I really like that idea.
Waitress Can I bring you anything else?
Jenny Could we have the check, please?
Waitress Yes, ma'am. Here's your check.
Jenny Thanks. Excuse me. I think there's a mistake. We had two bottles of water, not three.
Waitress You're right. I'm really sorry. It's not my day today! I'll get you a new check.
Jenny Thank you.
Holly We're going to have a fun month, Rob.
Rob Yeah, I think it's going to be fantastic.
Jenny OK, time to go. You have your meeting with Barbara at three.
Rob Oh yeah, right.

2.22

Host Teenagers today have a bad reputation. People say that they are lazy and messy and that they do very little to help their parents around the house. But there are some teenagers for whom this description is just not true at all.
It is estimated that there are more than 1.4 million teenagers in the US who have to look after a member of their family, their mother or father or brother or sister. In many cases these young helpers, or "caregivers" as they are called, are doing things like feeding, washing, and taking care of family members, as well as doing their school work.

2.23

Host I'd like to welcome to the program two of these teenagers, Alice and Daniel, who are 17 years old, and who both take care of family members. Hello, Alice, hello Daniel.
Alice / Daniel Hi.
Host Who do you take care of?
Alice I take care of my mom. She has M.E. – it's a disease – it means that she feels tired all the time and she can't walk very well. And I also take care of my younger brother and sister. He's six and she's four.
Daniel I take care of my mom, too. She had a bad car accident seven years ago and she can't walk. I also take care of my little sister.
Host You both do a lot of housework. What exactly do you do?
Alice On a normal day, I get up early and I clean the house and I do the ironing. After school I sometimes take my mom to the store in her wheelchair. In the evening my dad makes the dinner – I'm not very good at cooking! But I make sure my brother and sister eat their dinner and then I put them to bed.
Daniel My day's pretty similar. I clean the house and iron but I also do the cooking and the grocery shopping. My dad left home four years ago, so we're on our own. I take my sister to school and make sure that my mom is OK. I have to give her massages every evening.
Host How do you feel about the way you live?
Alice I don't really mind taking care of my mom. She's sick and she needs my help. But sometimes I feel a little sad when I can't go out because there are things to do around the house. And I sometimes get angry with my school friends. They don't really understand the problems I have at home. All they think about is clothes, boys, and going out.
Daniel I like what I do because I'm helping my mom, and I'm helping my sister at the same time. Of course it's true that I can't go out much because I need to spend most of my time at home. I sometimes go out with my friends, but I don't like leaving my mom by herself. I always make sure that I have my cell phone. If my mom needs anything, she calls me and I go back home. It's not a problem for me. It's just part of my life.
Host You're both doing a great job. Thanks very much for coming on the program.

2.26

1 **Interviewer** Have you ever bought something that you've never worn?
A Yes. Hasn't everyone? I remember some pants I bought that I never wore.
Interviewer What was the problem with them?
A They were very tight, black leather pants that I bought from a second-hand store when I was about 20 years old. I remember when I was in the fitting room I thought they looked amazing. I thought I looked like Jim Morrison from the Doors. But when I got home, in the cold light of day, I realized that I looked more like one of the women from Abba! That's why I never wore them.

2 **Interviewer** Have you ever bought something that you've never worn?
A Yes, a karate uniform. I decided that I wanted to do karate, and I signed up for lessons and bought the uniform and the orange belt but then I changed my mind and decided not to take the lessons.
Interviewer Why not?
A I was worried that someone would knock my teeth out.
Interviewer Do you still have the uniform?
A No, I sold it on eBay.

3 **Interviewer** Have you ever bought something that you've never worn?
A Sadly it happens to me a lot because I hate clothes shopping, and I never try things on. For example, I have a shirt in my closet now that I've never worn.
Interviewer Why not?
A Well, I bought it in a hurry a few months ago, and then I put it away in my closet. A few weeks later, I took it out and looked at it and I thought "Why did I buy this?" It's awful – pink and purple stripes. And of course I didn't have the receipt, so I couldn't take it back.

4 **Interviewer** Have you ever bought something that you've never worn?
A A lot of things, actually. The last one was a brown leather coat.
Interviewer What was wrong with it?
A Well, I bought it online from a website that has cheap deals, but when it arrived, it looked completely different from what it looked like on the computer screen, and I decided I didn't like it. So it's in my closet. I'm sure I'm never going to wear it, but maybe I'll give it to someone as a present.

2.32

Host Last Friday Steve, a businessman from Seattle, was looking forward to a relaxing two days in the mountains. He and his wife had arranged a skiing weekend in a luxury hotel. But the weekend didn't work out exactly as they had planned. Steve worked until late on Friday evening. His office was on the 12th floor. When he finished at 8 o'clock, he locked his office and got into the elevator ... and he didn't get out again until Monday morning!
Steve I pressed the button for the first floor, and the elevator started going down, but then it stopped. I pressed the button again, but nothing happened. I pressed the alarm and shouted, but nobody heard me. Most people had already gone home. I tried to call my wife, but my cell phone didn't work in the elevator. I couldn't do anything. I just sat on the floor and hoped maybe somebody would realize what had happened. But on Saturday and Sunday, I knew nobody would be there. I slept most of the time to forget how hungry I was.
Host Meanwhile Steve's wife, Kate, was waiting for her husband to come home.
Kate I was very worried when he didn't come home on Friday evening, and I couldn't understand why his cell phone wasn't working. I called the police, and they looked for him, but they couldn't find him anywhere. I thought maybe he was with another woman.
Host So Steve was in the elevator the whole weekend from Friday evening until Monday morning. At eight o'clock, when the office workers arrived, they called the emergency number, and somebody came and repaired the elevator.
Steve I was very happy to get out. I hadn't eaten since Friday afternoon, and I was very hungry. It's lucky that I am not claustrophobic because the elevator was very small. The first thing I did was to call my wife to say that I was OK.
Host Steve will soon be the fittest man in his office – from now on he's going to take the stairs every day – even though it's 12 floors.

2.42

Interviewer Today we talk to Laurel Reece, who's writing a book about how to live more slowly. She's going to give us five useful tips.
Laurel My first tip is something that is very simple to say, but more difficult to do in practice. Whatever you're doing, just try to slow down and enjoy it. If you're walking somewhere, try to walk more slowly; if you are driving, make yourself drive more slowly. It doesn't matter what you are doing, cooking, taking a shower, exercising in the gym, just slow down and really enjoy the moment.
We all try to do too many things that we just don't have time for. So my second tip is make a list of the three things that are most important for you – your priorities in life. Then when you've made your list make sure that you spend time doing those things. Imagine for example that your three things are your family, reading, and playing sports. Then make sure that you spend enough time with your family, that you have space in your life for reading, and that you have time to play sports. And forget about trying to do other things that you don't have time for.
Tip number three is don't try to do two things at the same time. The worst thing you can do is multitask. So for example, don't read your email while you are talking to a friend on the phone. If you do that, you aren't really focusing on your email or your friend and you aren't going to feel very relaxed either.
Tip number four is very simple: once a day, every day, sit down and do nothing for half an hour. For example, go to a cafe and sit outside, or go to a park and sit on a bench. Turn off your phone so that nobody can contact you, and then just sit and watch the world go by. This will really help you to slow down.
OK. My fifth and final tip. One of the most relaxing things you can do is to be near water or even better, to be on water. So if you live near a lake or river, go and sit by the river, or go boating.

If you live near the ocean, go and sit on the beach. Relax and listen to the sound of the wind and the water. You will feel your body and mind slowing down as the minutes go past.

2.45

First, I did the photo test. I asked an office worker who was eating his sandwich to take a photo of me. He was really friendly and said, "Of course I'll take your picture." When I asked him to take more photos, he said, "Sure! No problem!" When he gave me my camera back, he said, "Have a nice day!"

Next, it was the shopping test. I went shopping near Times Square, and I bought an "I love New York" T-shirt and some drinks from two different people. I gave them too much money, but they both gave me the exact change back.

Finally, it was time for the accident test. For this test, I went to Central Park, and I fell down on the ground. I only had to wait about 30 seconds before a man came to help me. "Is this your camera?" he said. "I think it's broken."

2.51

Host Next in our list of things that you thought were bad for you is chocolate. Jane, our food expert, is going to tell us why actually it can be good for us.

Jane Well, there have been a lot of studies recently about chocolate. Remember, chocolate is something that we've been eating for hundreds of years – it's not a modern invention. And the studies show that chocolate, like grape juice, contains antioxidants. In fact, chocolate has more antioxidants than grape juice. These antioxidants can protect us against illnesses like heart disease.

Host Really?

Jane Yes, but, and this is very important, all the good antioxidants are only in dark chocolate. So don't eat milk chocolate or white chocolate – they aren't healthy at all. And of course, you also need to remember that although dark chocolate is good for you, it contains a lot of calories, so if you're worried about your weight, don't eat too much. One or two pieces a day is enough.

Host Great news for me because I love chocolate! And now to Tony, our TV journalist. Tony, newspaper articles are always telling us about studies that say that we watch too much TV, that we spend too much time sitting in front of the TV and that as a result, we don't exercise enough. They also say that watching TV makes us stupid. Is this all true Tony?

Tony Well, it's almost certainly true that we watch too much television, but it probably isn't true that watching TV makes us stupid. I've just finished reading a book by a science writer, Steven Johnson, called *Everything Bad Is Good for You*. One thing he says in his book is that modern TV series like *The Sopranos* or *House* or *Mad Men* are more intellectually stimulating than TV series were 20 years ago. He says that these shows are complicated and very smart and that they help to make us more intelligent.

Host Well, I can believe that, but what about reality shows that are so popular on TV. I can't believe that these are good for us.

Tony Well, Steven Johnson says that we can even learn something from reality shows – he says this kind of TV show can teach us about group psychology – about how people behave when they're in a group.

Host Well, thank you, Tony and Jane. So now you know what to do this evening. You can sit down in front of the TV with a box of dark chocolates...

2.55

Holly Hey, Rob, come on. Keep up.
Rob Sorry. I'm a bit tired this morning.
Holly You aren't exactly in good shape, are you?
Rob I know, I know. I think I'm eating too much.
Holly Then eat less!
Rob It isn't easy. I eat out all the time. And the portions in American restaurants are enormous.
Holly You don't do enough exercise.
Rob I walk a lot.
Holly Walking isn't enough, Rob. Do you do anything to keep fit?
Rob I cycle when I'm in London...
Holly So why don't you get a bike here?
Rob I'm only here for another three weeks. Anyway, my hotel's near the office. I don't need a bike.
Holly You know, Jennifer goes running all the time. Before and after work. But I just think that running is just so boring. I mean, where's the fun?
Rob Yeah, I'm not very keen on running.
Holly So why don't you play basketball with me and my friends?
Rob OK. That's a great idea! But I don't have any trainers.
Holly Trainers? Sneakers! You can buy some.
Rob Is there a sports shop near here?
Holly Sure, there's one across the street.

2.59

Rob Hi, Jenny.
Jenny Oh, hi.
Rob Have you had a good day?
Jenny Oh, you know. Meetings! What about you?
Rob It was great. I went to Brooklyn and met some really interesting people.
Jenny And you had time to go shopping, too.
Rob What? Oh yeah. I've just bought these.
Jenny What are they?
Rob A pair of trainers – uh, sneakers.
Jenny Nice. Why did you buy sneakers?
Rob I think I need to get a bit fitter.
Jenny Oh, I'm impressed. You know, I go running every morning in Central Park.
Rob Do you?
Jenny It's so beautiful early in the morning. Why don't you come with me?
Rob Uh... sure. Why not?
Jenny Great! I'll come by your hotel tomorrow morning.
Rob OK. What time?
Jenny Six forty-five?
Rob Six...?
Jenny Forty-five.
Rob Can we make it a bit later? Say, seven forty-five?
Jenny That's too late, Rob. Let's make it seven fifteen.
Rob OK.
Jenny Excellent. See you later.
Rob Great.
Holly Basketball and running, Rob. You must have a lot of energy.
Rob Uh... yeah.

3.8

Host Today's topic is "positive thinking." We all know that people who are positive enjoy life more than people who are negative and pessimistic. But scientific studies show that positive people are also healthier. They get better more quickly when they are sick, and they live longer. A recent study has shown that people who are optimistic and think positively live, on average, nine years longer than pessimistic people. So, let's hear what you the listeners think. Do you have any ideas to help us be more positive in our lives?

3.9

Host Our first caller this evening is Andy. Hi Andy. What's your tip for being positive?

Andy Hello. Well, I think it's very important to live in the present and not in the past. Don't think about mistakes you made in the past. You can't change the past. The important thing is to think about how you can do things better now and in the future.

Host Thank you, Andy. And now we have another caller. What's your name, please?

Julie Hi, My name's Julie. My tip is think positive thoughts, not negative ones. We all have negative thoughts sometimes, but when we start having them, we need to stop and try to change them into positive ones. Like, if you have an exam tomorrow and you start thinking "I'm sure I'll fail," then you'll fail the exam. So you need to change that negative thought to a positive thought. Just think to yourself "I'll pass." I do this and it usually works.

Host Thank you, Julie. And our next caller is Marco. Hi, Marco.

Marco Hi. My tip is don't spend a lot of time reading the papers or watching the news on TV. It's always bad news and it just makes you feel depressed. Read a book or listen to your favorite music instead.

Host Thanks, Marco. And our next caller is Miriam. Miriam?

Miriam Hi.

Host Hi, Miriam. What's your tip?

Miriam My tip is every week make a list of all the good things that happened to you. Then keep the list with you, in your bag or in a pocket, and if you're feeling a little sad or depressed, just take it out and read it. It'll make you feel better.

Host Thanks, Miriam. And our last call is from Michael. Hi, Michael. We're listening.

Michael Hi. My tip is to try to use positive language when you speak to other people. You know, if your friend has a problem, don't say "I'm sorry" or "Oh, poor you," say something positive like "Don't worry! Everything will be OK." That way you'll make the other person think more positively about his or her problem.

Host Thank you, Michael. Well, that's all we have time for. A big thank you to all our callers. Until next week – goodbye.

3.13

Narrator Earlier this year, ten years after Steve sent the letter, some workers were renovating the living room in Carmen's mother's house. When they took out the fireplace they found Steve's letter, and gave it to Carmen's sister, and she sent the letter to Carmen. Carmen was now 42, and she was still single.

Carmen When I got the letter I didn't call Steve right away because I was so nervous. I kept picking up the phone and putting it down again. I almost didn't call him at all. But I knew that I had to make the call.

Narrator Carmen finally made the call and Steve answered the phone. He was also now 42 and also single.

Steve I couldn't believe it when she called. I just moved into a new house, but luckily I kept my old phone number.

Narrator Steve and Carmen arranged to meet a few days later.

Steve When we met it was like a movie. We ran across the airport and into each other's arms. Within 30 seconds of seeing each other again we were kissing. We fell in love all over again.

Narrator Last week the couple got married, 17 years after they first met.

Carmen I never got married in all those years, but now I have married the man I always loved.

Narrator So Steve and Carmen are together at last. But will they keep their promises?

3.17

Patient So what does it mean, doctor?
Dr. Well, first the party. A party is a group of people. This means that you're going to meet a lot of people. I think you're going to be very busy.
Patient At work?
Dr. Yes, at work... you work in an office, I think?

Patient Yes, that's right.
Dr. I think the party means you are going to have a lot of meetings.
Patient What about the garden and the flowers? Do they mean anything?
Dr. Yes. Flowers are a positive symbol. So the flowers mean that you are feeling positive about the future. So maybe you already knew about this possible promotion?
Patient No, I didn't. But it's true, I am very happy at work, and I feel very positive about my future. That's not where my problems are. My problems are with my love life. Does my dream tell you anything about that?
Dr. Mm, yes it does. You're single, aren't you?
Patient Yes, well, divorced.
Dr. Because the violin music tells me you want some romance in your life – you're looking for a partner perhaps?
Patient Yes, yes, I am. In fact I met a woman last month – I really like her... I think I'm in love with her. I'm meeting her tonight.
Dr. In your dream you saw an owl in a tree.
Patient Yes, an owl... a big owl.
Dr. The owl represents an older person. I think you'll need to ask this older person for help. Maybe this "older person" is me? Maybe you need my help?
Patient Well, yes, what I really want to know is does this person, this woman... love me?

3 18

Patient Well, yes, what I really want to know is does this person, this woman... love me?
Dr. You remember the end of your dream? You were feeling cold?
Patient Yes, my feet were very cold.
Dr. Well, I think perhaps you already know the answer to your question.
Patient You mean she doesn't love me.
Dr. No, I don't think so. I think you will need to find another woman. I'm sorry. Perhaps you can find someone on the Internet? I have heard of a very good website...

3 23

Nico Hi, Emily. Sorry I'm late. I was watching the big game.
Emily Well, come on in. Mom, this is Nico. Nico, this is my mom.
Nico Oh... hello.
Mom Nice to meet you, Nico.
Emily And this is my Dad.
Dad Hello, Nico.
Nico Hello.
Dad Come on into the living room.

Dad Would you like a drink, Nico? Orange juice, soda?
Nico Oh, thanks, John. I'll have a soda, please.

Mom You're a vegetarian, aren't you, Nico?
Nico Yes, I am. Personally I think eating animals is totally wrong.
Mom Ahem, well, this is vegetable lasagna. I hope you like it. Emily's Dad made it.

Dad Any more lasagna, Nico?
Nico Oh, uh, no thanks. I'm not very hungry.
Emily The lasagna is delicious, Dad.
Mom Yes, it is.
Dad Thank you.

Emily I'll do the dishes, Mom.
Dad No, I'll do them.
Nico Uh, where's the bathroom?

Nico Did you watch the big game this evening, John? The Lakers and the Celtics. It was exciting.
Dad No, I didn't watch it. I don't like basketball at all. In fact, I hate it.
Nico Oh.

Mom So...what are you going to do when you finish college, Nico?
Nico Uh, I don't know.
Dad What are you studying in college?
Nico Sociology.
Dad Why did you choose sociology?
Nico Because I thought it was easy.
Mom Is it interesting?
Nico It's OK. Uh ... What was Emily like as a little girl, Marion? Do you have any photos of her?
Mom Photos of Emily? Yes, we have thousands of photos. She was the cutest little girl, wasn't she John?
Dad Yes, she was. A beautiful little girl.
Nico Can I see some?
Emily Oh, no, please.
Mom John, can you bring the photo albums?

Mom Look, and this is one when she was three years old.
Dad And this is when we went to Disney World. That's Emily with Mickey and Minnie Mouse.
Nico Ah! She was so sweet.
Dad Would you like another soda, Nico?
Nico Yes, please, John.

3 32

Interviewer Good morning and welcome. On today's program we're going to talk about singing. In the studio, we have Franco, the director of a singing school in Miami, and Molly, a student at Franco's school. Good morning to both of you.
Franco / Molly Good morning.
Interviewer First, Franco, can you tell us, why is it a good idea for people to learn to sing?
Franco First, because singing makes you feel good. And secondly, because singing is very good for your health.
Interviewer Really? In what way?
Franco Well, when you learn to sing you need to learn to breathe correctly. That's very important. And you also learn to stand and sit correctly. As a result, people who sing are often in better shape and healthier than people who don't.
Interviewer Are your classes only for professional singers?
Franco No, not at all. They're for everybody. You don't need to have any experience with singing. And you don't need to be able to read music.
Interviewer So how do your students learn to sing?
Franco They learn by listening and repeating. Singing well is really 95% listening.
Interviewer OK. Molly, tell us about the class. How long did it last?
Molly Only one day. From ten in the morning to six in the evening.
Interviewer Could you already sing well before you started?
Molly No, not well. I've always liked singing. But I can't read music, and I never thought I sang very well.
Interviewer So what happened during the class?
Molly Well, first we did a lot of listening and breathing exercises, and we learned some other interesting techniques.
Interviewer What sorts of things?
Molly Well, for example we learned that it's easier to sing high notes if you sing with a surprised look on your face!
Interviewer Oh, really? Could you show us?
Molly Well, I'll try.
Interviewer For those of you at home, I can promise you that Molly looked very surprised. Were you happy with your progress?
Molly Absolutely. At the end of the day, we were singing in almost perfect harmony. It was amazing. In just one day, we really were much better.
Interviewer Could you two give us a little demonstration?
Franco / Molly Oh, OK...

3 37

Journalist I arrived the airport in San Juan, Puerto Rico where I met Nilda. *Hola Soy Max.*
Nilda *Encantada. Soy Nilda.*
Journalist Nilda took me to my hotel, and that evening we went to eat, and it was time for my first test. I had to order a sandwich and a drink in a cafe and then ask for the check. I sat down at a table, and I tried to order a soda and a chicken sandwich. *Por favor, una refresca y un emparedado de pollo.*
Waiter *En seguida.*
Journalist Terrific! The waiter understood me the first time. My pronunciation wasn't perfect, but I got my soda and my sandwich. I really enjoyed it. But then the more difficult part. Asking for the check... *¿Cuánto es?*
Waiter *Seis noventa.*
Journalist *¿Cómo?*
Waiter *Seis noventa.*
Journalist Six ninety. I understood! Nilda gave me eight points for the test. I was very happy with that. Next, we went out on the street. Test number two was asking for directions and understanding them. We were on a narrow street, and I had to stop someone and ask him or her for the nearest drugstore, *Una farmacia.* I stopped a woman. At first, I didn't understand anything she said!
Passer-by *Siga todo derecho y tome la segunda calle al la izquierda. Hay una farmacia en esa calle.*
Journalist I asked the woman to speak more slowly.
Passer-by *Todo derecho y tome la segunda calle a la izqueirda IZQUIERDA.*
Journalist I got it this time, I think. The second street on the left. I followed the directions and guess what? There was a drugstore there! Seven points from Nilda.
Test number three. I wasn't looking forward to this one. I had to take a taxi to a historical place in San Juan. Nilda wrote down the name of the place on a piece of paper. It was the name of an old fort near the ocean. We stopped a taxi.
Journalist *El Morro, por favor.*
Taxi driver *¿Qué? ¿Adónde?*
Journalist He didn't understand me. I tried again but he still didn't understand. I was desperate so I said *"fort, old, water."*
Taxi driver *¡Ah! El Morro.*
Journalist Finally! Nilda only gave me five points because I ended up using English. Still, at least I made the taxi driver understand where I wanted to go. And so to the final test. I had to leave a message in Spanish on somebody's voicemail. I had to give my name, spell it, and ask the person to call me back. Nilda gave me the number (it was one of her friends named Lourdes) and I dialed. I was feeling a little nervous at this point, because talking on the phone in a foreign language is never easy.
Lourdes *Deje su mensaje después de la señal.*
Journalist *Uh. Buenas noches. Soy Max. Max. M-A-X. Uh... Por favor... llamarme esta noche... Oh, yes... a las 8:30, Uh Gracias.* Well, my grammar wasn't correct, but I left the message. Half an hour later, at eight thirty, Lourdes called me. Success! Nilda gave me eight points. That was the end of my four tests. Nilda was happy with me. My final score was seven. I was very happy with that. So how much can you learn in a month? Well, of course you can't learn Spanish in a month, but you can learn enough to survive if you are on vacation or on a trip. Now I want to go back to Washington, D.C., and try and learn some more. *¡Adiós!*

3 38

Jenny Are you OK?
Rob Me? Never better.
Jenny It's beautiful here, isn't it? I think this is my favorite place in New York.
Rob Yeah, it's great.
Jenny So how's it all going? Are you happy you came?
Rob To Central Park? At seven fifteen in the morning?
Jenny To New York, Rob.
Rob Yeah. Of course I'm happy. It's fantastic.
Jenny Really? You aren't just saying that.
Rob No, I mean it.
Jenny You need to get in shape, Rob.
Rob I know. I am a bit tired of eating out all the time. It isn't good for my figure.
Jenny It's the restaurants you go to! Why don't you come over to my place after work? I could make you something a little healthier.
Rob I'd really like that. Thanks.
Jenny So, how do you feel now? Are you ready to go again?
Rob Oh yes! I'm ready for anything.
Jenny Are you sure you're OK?
Rob Absolutely.
Jenny OK. We'll only go around two more times.
Rob Two? Excellent!

3 42

Rob That was a lovely meal. Thanks, Jenny.
Jenny That's OK.
Rob It's been great being in New York. You know, your offer to work here came at a very good time for me.
Jenny Really?
Rob Yeah, I was looking for something new. Something different. You see, I broke up with my girlfriend a few months before I met you.
Jenny Oh... right.
Rob What about you?
Jenny What about me?
Rob You know... relationships?
Jenny Oh, I've been too busy recently to think about relationships. Getting this job at the magazine was a really big thing for me. I guess that's taken up all my time and energy.
Rob But that isn't very good for you. Only thinking about work, I mean.
Jenny Why didn't you tell me you weren't feeling well this morning? We didn't have to go for a run.
Rob I wanted to go. It was nice.
Jenny Well, I'm glad you're feeling better. Would you like another coffee?
Rob No, thanks. I think I should get back to the hotel now. I've got a really busy day tomorrow. Do you have a telephone number for a taxi?
Jenny Yeah...but it's much easier to get a cab on the street.
Rob Oh, OK, then.
Jenny I'll see you in the morning, if you're feeling OK.
Rob Oh, I'm sure I'll be fine. Thanks again for a great evening.
Jenny Any time.
Rob Goodnight.
Jenny Night, Rob.

3 50

Host Welcome to this morning's edition of *What's the problem?* Today, we're talking about friends, so if you have a problem with one of your friends, and you'd like our psychologist Catherine to give you some advice, just call us at 1-800-555-5500. Our first caller today is Kevin from Atlanta. Hello, Kevin.
Kevin Hi.
Host What's the problem?
Kevin Yes. My problem is with my best friend, Alan. Well, the thing is, he's always flirting with my girlfriend.
Host Your best friend flirts with your girlfriend?
Kevin Yes, when the three of us are together he always says things to my girlfriend like, "Wow! You look amazing today" or "I love your dress, Suzanne," things like that. And when we're at a party, he always asks her to dance.
Host Do you think he's in love with your girlfriend?
Kevin I don't know, but I'm getting really stressed about it. What can I do?

3 51

Host Well, let's see if our expert can help. Catherine?
Catherine Hello, Kevin. Have you talked to your girlfriend about this?
Kevin No, I haven't. I don't want Suzanne to think I'm jealous.
Catherine Well, first I think you should talk to her. Ask her how she feels and what she thinks of Alan's behavior. Maybe she thinks it's fine, and they are just good friends. That it's just his personality. If that's what she thinks, then I think you should accept it and relax.
Kevin What should I do if she also finds it uh, difficult, uh, uncomfortable?
Catherine Then I think you should talk to Alan. Tell him that he's a good friend, but that you and Suzanne have problems with the way he behaves. I'm sure he'll stop doing it. He's probably never thought it was a problem.
Kevin OK, thanks. I'll talk to Suzanne tonight.

3 52

Host And our next caller is Miranda from Brooklyn. Hi, Miranda.
Miranda Hi.
Host And what's your problem?
Miranda My problem is with my husband's ex wife. They divorced five years ago, before I met him. But she still calls him at least once a week to chat, and if she has a problem in her apartment or with her car, she always calls him and asks him to come and help her.
Host Does your husband have children with his ex-wife?
Miranda No, they don't have any children. That's why I think she should stay out of our lives.
Host Catherine, over to you. What do you think Miranda should do?

3 53

Catherine Hi, Miranda. Well, first, have you spoken to your husband about this?
Miranda Yes, I have. He thinks I'm being difficult. He feels sorry for his ex – she's on her own, and she doesn't have a partner.
Catherine OK. Miranda, do you have any male friends, men who are just good friends?
Miranda Yes, I have a friend named Bill. We've been friends since I was a teenager.
Catherine That's perfect. My advice is this: When your husband's ex-wife calls and asks him to go and see her, call Bill and arrange to meet and have dinner or go to the movies. Every time your husband meets his ex or has a long phone call, then you meet Bill or have a long phone call. He'll soon see what's happening, and he'll stop seeing his ex.
Miranda I think that's a great idea. Thank you, Catherine.
Host And the next caller is...

4 6

Host And to finish our program today, the incredible story of a Swedish couple who went on vacation and survived no fewer than seven natural disasters!
Stefan and Erika Svanström started their four-month trip last December. They were traveling with their young baby daughter. First, they flew from Stockholm to Munich. But when they arrived in Munich, they couldn't get their connecting flight to Thailand because there was a terrible blizzard in south Germany – the worst snowstorm in 100 years! They had to wait at the airport for 24 hours. Mrs. Svanström said:
Mrs. Svanström "We just thought things will get better."
Host When they finally got to Thailand, they had a relaxing few weeks. But that was the last time they could really relax. From Thailand they flew to the island of Bali in Indonesia, a popular vacation destination. When they arrived in Bali they were expecting blue skies and sun, but what they got were terrible monsoon rains – the worst monsoons for many years. Mrs. Svanström said:
Mrs. Svanström "Now we were thinking, what will happen next?"
Host They decided not to stay in Bali, but to go to Australia. They flew to Perth in western Australia, but hours after they arrived, Perth suffered terrible forest fires, and the streets were full of smoke. They traveled north to Cairns, and arrived just in time for Cyclone Yasi – one of the worst cyclones ever to hit the city. They had to leave their hotel and spend 24 hours in a shopping center with 2,500 other people.
Could things get any worse? Yes, they could. The Svanström family left Cairns and traveled south to Brisbane to visit friends, but the city was suffering from the worst floods in its history. So they left Brisbane and booked airline tickets to Christchurch in New Zealand. But just before their plane left Brisbane, some friends called them to say that Christchurch had been hit by an earthquake and a large part of the city was destroyed. Their plane landed in another city, Auckland. They traveled around New Zealand for a while, and then they flew to Japan. On March 11th, they were having lunch in a restaurant in Tokyo when suddenly everything began to shake. It was an earthquake: nine on the Richter scale and one of the worst that ever hit Japan. And after the earthquake came a devastating tsunami. Fortunately, Mr. and Mrs. Svanström and their child were not hurt. They traveled from Japan to China for the last part of their vacation. Luckily, they didn't have any more natural disasters, and they arrived safely home in Stockholm on March 29th. Mr. Svanström said:
Mr. Svanström "We have learned that in life you should always expect the worst, but hope for the best. Also, you need to be prepared for anything."

4 10

Part 3
Hartley "Héloise will go,"
Reader said Hartley angrily.
Hartley "I haven't had one day without problems since I met her. You are right, Vivienne. Héloise must go before I can take you home. But she will go. I have decided..."
Vivienne "Then,"
Reader said Vivienne,
Vivienne "my answer is yes. I will be yours."
Reader She looked into his eyes and Hartley could hardly believe his luck.
Hartley "Promise me,"
Reader he said.
Vivienne "I promise,"
Reader repeated Vivienne, softly. At the door he turned and looked at her happily,
Hartley "I will come for you tomorrow,"
Reader he said.
Vivienne "Tomorrow,"
Reader she repeated with a smile. An hour and forty minutes later Hartley stepped off the train when it stopped in the suburbs, and walked to his house. As he walked toward the door a woman ran to him. She had black hair and was wearing a long white dress. They kissed, and walked into the house.

4 11

Part 4

Hartley's wife "My mother is here,"

Reader the woman said.

Hartley's wife "But she's leaving in half an hour. She came to have dinner, but there's nothing to eat."

Hartley "I have something to tell you,"

Reader said Hartley. He whispered something in her ear. His wife screamed. Her mother came running into the hall. The woman screamed again, but it was a happy scream – the sound of a woman whose husband loved her.

Hartley's wife "Oh, mother!"

Reader she cried,

Hartley's wife "What do you think? Vivienne is coming to be our cook! She is the cook that was with the Montgomery's. She's going to be ours! And now, dear,"

Reader she told her husband,

Hartley's wife "you must go to the kitchen and tell Heloise to leave. She has been drunk again all day."

4 20

1 **Interviewer** Do you have any phobias?

A Yes, I'm terrified of bats.

Interviewer Really? How long have you had the phobia?

A I've had it for about forty years! Since I was 12 years old. At my school we had a swimming pool, and the changing rooms were in an old building near the pool. On the first day at school our teacher told us that there were bats in there and that we shouldn't move around too much because they might start flying around and get into our hair. She also said we shouldn't turn the lights on because this would wake up the bats. We had to change as quickly and quietly as possible.

Interviewer Did a bat ever fly into your hair?

A No, nothing ever happened, but I was terrified just at the thought of it.

Interviewer Does it affect your life at all?

A Yes, I often feel very nervous or start to panic if I'm outside when it's beginning to get dark, which is when bats appear. If I'm sitting in my yard in the evening, I always have a tennis racket, so if a bat flies near me, I can protect myself. And I can't watch a TV documentary about bats, or even look at them in photos.

2 **Interviewer** Do you have any phobias?

B Yes, I get very bad claustrophobia.

Interviewer How long have you had the phobia?

B It just started one morning about ten years ago. I was going to work on the train, and it was very crowded. I started thinking that if there were an accident, I'd never get out. I had a panic attack, and I sort of felt my heart beating very quickly. I had to get off the train.

Interviewer How does your phobia affect your life?

B Well, I can't travel on crowded trains. I never ever travel on the subway because my worst nightmare would be if the train stopped in the tunnel. I also try to avoid elevators. What else? Oh, yes, if I'm flying, I have to have an aisle seat. I can't sit by the window.

3 **Interviewer** Do you have any phobias?

C Yes, I have a pretty unusual phobia. I'm scared of clowns.

Interviewer Clowns, really? How long have you had it?

C I've had it for a long time. Since I was a child.

Interviewer How did it start?

C Well, I remember I went on a school trip to the circus when I was six or seven years old and there were clowns. I thought they were sort of stupid but I wasn't really afraid of them. Then I went to a birthday party and there were clowns and they were showing us how to paint our faces, and I found I didn't like being near them. At first I just didn't like them, but over the years my feelings have changed to fear.

Interviewer Does your phobia affect your life at all?

C Not really because luckily I don't see clowns very often!

4 29

Good evening and welcome to *Top Sounds*, our weekly music program, and tonight the focus is on the Latin music star Enrique Iglesias. As I'm sure you all know, Enrique Iglesias is the son of the Spanish singer Julio Iglesias, who is one of the most successful singing artists of all time.

Enrique was born in Madrid, Spain in 1975. His mother is Isabel Preysler, a journalist and TV host from the Philippines. When he was three years old his parents got divorced and later he moved to Miami to live with his father. He started studying business at the University of Miami, but he left after a year because he wanted to become a musician. He didn't want his father to know about his music career, and he didn't want to use his famous last name to be successful. So when he sent some of his songs to several record companies, he used the name Enrique Martinez, and he eventually got a contract with a Mexican record company.

He made his first album, called *Enrique Iglesias* in 1995, which won him a Grammy. He then made two more albums, and he had many hits on the Latin music charts. At first Enrique sang mainly in Spanish but later he began to sing more and more in English too.

His fourth album, *Escape* in 2001, was his biggest commercial success and included the singles *Escape* and *Hero*, sung in English, which became hits all over the world and made Enrique an international star. Since then he has made five other albums and has also had a few acting parts in movies and TV shows. Also in 2001, he began dating the Russian tennis player, Ana Kournikova, but they kept their relationship very private. Today Enrique Iglesias is recognized as one of the most popular artists in Latin America. He has sold 100 million albums, which makes him one of the best selling artists of all time.

4 31

Holly That was a good day's work, Rob. You did a great interview.

Rob You took some great photos, too. They're really nice.

Holly Thanks. Hey, let's have another coffee.

Rob I don't know. I have to get to Manhattan.

Holly You don't have to go right now.

Rob I'm not sure. I don't want to be late.

Holly Why do you have to go to Manhattan?

Rob I've got a... um...

Holly A date? You have a date?

Rob Mm hmm.

Holly Is it with anybody I know?

Rob No, it isn't. Anyway, excuse me a minute. I need to go to the restroom.

Holly That's very American. I'll order more coffees.

Rob OK.

Jenny Rob?

Holly Is that you, Jennifer?

Jenny Oh, hi Holly. Um... is Rob there?

Holly Yeah, one second. Rob! Not anybody I know, huh?

Rob Hi, Jenny.

Jenny Rob? Are you still in Brooklyn?

Rob Yeah.

Jenny You know the reservation at the restaurant's for eight, right?

Rob Don't worry. I'll be there! Oh, how do I get to Greenwich Village on the subway?

4 35

Rob Jenny! I'm here.

Jenny Hi.

Rob I'm so sorry. There was a problem on the underground.

Jenny We call it the subway here.

Rob Right. Anyway, the train stopped for about twenty minutes. I tried to call but there was no signal.

Jenny I've been here since seven forty-five.

Rob I know. I ran from the underground... subway station... I'm so sorry.

Jenny You're always late. It's funny, isn't it?

Rob I said I'm sorry. Look, why don't we go back inside the restaurant?

Jenny I waited for an hour for you. I don't want to stay here anymore.

Rob Maybe we could... we could go for a walk. We could find another restaurant.

Jenny I don't feel like a walk. It's been a long day.

Rob OK.

Jenny But the night is still young. Maybe you have time to meet up with Holly again.

Rob Holly?

Jenny I'm sorry. I didn't mean to say that.

Rob I don't care about Holly.

Jenny Forget it, Rob. Now if you don't mind, I'd like to go home.

Rob Listen to me, Jenny. Holly is just a colleague.

Jenny I said forget it. It's OK.

Rob No, it isn't OK. Look. I know I'm always late. And I know the underground is the subway. But that's not the point! I'm not interested in Holly. I came to New York because of you. The only person I'm interested in is you!

4 37

Host Good afternoon, and welcome to another edition of *Science Today*. On today's program we are going to hear about women inventors. When we think of famous inventors we usually think of men, people like Alexander Graham Bell, Guglielmo Marconi, Thomas Edison. But, as Sally will tell us, many of the things that make our lives easier today were invented by women.

Sally That's absolutely right. Let's take the dishwasher for example. This was invented by a woman named Josephine Cochrane in 1886. She was a rich American who gave a lot of dinner parties. But she was annoyed that her servants used to break plates and glasses when they were washing the dishes after a party. So, Josephine decided to try and invent a machine that could wash a lot of plates and glasses safely. Apparently she said: "If nobody else is going to invent a dishwasher, then I will!" She designed the machine and then she found a company to make it. At first only hotels and restaurants bought Josephine's new machine but today the dishwasher is used by millions of people all over the world.

The car was invented by a man, but it was a woman, Mary Anderson, who in 1903 solved one of the biggest problems of driving. Until her invention it was impossible for drivers to see where they were going when it was raining or snowing. They had to open their window. The name of Mary's invention? Windshield wipers.

An invention that definitely improved the lives of millions of people was disposable diapers. They were invented by a woman named Marion Donovan. Her father and uncle were inventors, and when she had young children, she sat down and invented a diaper that you could use and then throw away. Anybody who has a small baby will know what a big difference disposable diapers make to our lives. But although she invented it in 1950, it wasn't until 1961 that an American company bought Marion's idea. Today, more than 55 million disposable diapers are used every day and Marion's invention has been made more eco-friendly. Now you can buy biodegradable diapers!

And now to our next inventor. In 1956, Bette Nesmith Graham was working as a secretary. Like all secretaries at that time she used to get very frustrated and angry when she made typing mistakes. In those days if you made a mistake, you had to get a new sheet of paper and start again from the beginning. Then she had a brilliant

idea, which was to use a white liquid to paint over mistakes. Her invention is called white-out today. Mrs. Graham was a divorced mother and her invention made her a very rich woman. Her son, Mike Nesmith, became a famous pop star – he was a member of the American group, The Monkees.

And finally... police officers, soldiers, and politicians all over the world are protected by something that was invented by a woman. In 1966 Stephanie Kwolek invented kevlar, a special material that was very light but incredibly strong, much stronger than metal. This material is used to make bullet-proof vests. Stephanie's invention has probably saved thousands of lives.

Host Thank you very much, Sally. So, if you thought that everything was invented by men, think again.

4 46

1 **Host** Did you like school?
A No, definitely not.
Host Why?
A I didn't like most of my classes – I was always bored, and I hated exams. And the worst thing of all was PE. Where I went to school we used to play rugby. Ugh. It was torture.

2 **Host** Did you like school?
B I loved elementary school, but I didn't really like high school.
Host Why not?
B Well, my high school was very big and it was sort of cold and impersonal. It took me a very long time before I felt at home there. And I'm not really very academic, but the school was. We used to get loads of homework which I hated.

3 **Host** Did you like school?
C Uh, yes, I did.
Host Why?
C I was very curious about everything when I was little, so I liked school because I learned about new things. And of course, I used to see my friends every day. The other thing I loved was the library – my school had an amazing library – I even used to stay there after class just to read. Oh boy, I sound so goody-goody, but it's true!

4 **Host** Did you like school?
D Not really.
Host Why?
D It was a boys' school, and I got a little bit fed up with just being with boys all the time.

5 **Host** Did you like school?
E It was all right. Some parts were better than others, of course. The classes I liked totally depended on the teacher. So for example physics and English were great, but chemistry and history were terrible. I generally liked sports, except in the winter. I made some good friends at school, and I'm still in touch with a few of them 30 years later, so I suppose that's positive!

6 **Host** Did you like school?
F Actually, I used to really love school. Classes were fine, and I always did well without having to work too hard. But the real reason I loved school was because I had a very good social life. I had a lot of friends, and we used to play basketball on the playground at lunchtime. I was one of the gang. I felt that I belonged there. I've never really felt like that since then.

5 11

And our last story on today's *News Hour* is about an incredible coincidence. Have you ever put your name into Google or Facebook to see what comes up? One evening last April, an American woman, Kelly Hildebrandt, did just that. She was feeling bored, so she put her name into Facebook. She has a pretty unusual name, so she was amazed to discover that there was another person on Facebook with exactly the same first name and last name as her – but with one big difference. The other Kelly Hildebrandt was a man, and he lived in Texas. Kelly sent him a message, and they began to email each other. Later they started to call each other every day, and finally, they met in person. They discovered that they had more in common than just their name – they both love the beach, and they both really enjoy cooking. Soon they realized that they were in love. At first, they were worried that they might be related, but they found out that there was no family connection at all, and in October Kelly asked Kelly to marry him. The two Kelly's call each other "Kelly girl" and "Kelly boy," and they say that having the same name often causes confusion – once when Kelly boy booked travel tickets for them the travel agent almost canceled one ticket because he thought that booking two tickets with the same name was a mistake. But there is one thing that the two Kellys are very clear about – if they have children they definitely won't name them Kelly!

5 12

Jenny I can't believe it. Your month here is nearly over. It's gone so fast.
Rob I know. I've had a great time, Jenny.
Jenny Me too. It's been really special. But...
Rob But what?
Jenny It won't be the same when you're in London and I'm here.
Rob But we'll still be in touch. You can visit me in London and I can come back here to see you.
Jenny It still won't be the same.
Rob No. No, it won't.
Jenny Maybe... I could come back to London with you?
Rob You can't do that Jenny. You've just got this job.
Jenny That's true.
Rob Well, we still have some time together. We're going out for dinner tonight!
Jenny Yes, and I'm going to take you somewhere really nice.
Rob Look at the time. I have to go now; it's my last interview in New York. I don't want to be late.
Jenny OK. See you later then.
Rob Bye.
Barbara Jenny, is Rob here?
Jenny Oh, you just missed him, Barbara.
Barbara I really need to talk to him. I'll try him on his cell phone. Hello, Rob? It's Barbara. Can you give me a call? There's something I'd like to talk about.

5 15

Rob Jenny!
Jenny Rob! I have something to tell you.
Rob I have something to tell you, too. You go first.
Jenny Well. I thought again about moving to London...
Rob But you don't need to move to London.
Jenny What?
Rob Barbara called me earlier.
Jenny What about?
Rob She offered me a job. Here, in New York!
Jenny What?! Oh, that's great news.
Rob You don't seem very pleased.
Jenny I am, I mean, it's great! It's just that...
Rob What?
Jenny I sent Barbara an email this morning.
Rob And?
Jenny I told her I was quitting, and moving to London.
Rob Don't worry. Maybe she hasn't read your email yet.
Jenny I'll call her.
Barbara Hello, Barbara Keaton.
Jenny Barbara? It's Jenny.
Barbara Oh, hi Jenny.
Jenny Um, have you read your emails recently? There's one from me.
Barbara Oh yes. I can see it. I haven't opened it yet.
Jenny Don't open it! Delete it! Please just delete it. I'll explain later.
Barbara OK. It's gone. Is everything alright, Jenny?
Jenny Yes, thanks. Never better.

5 19

And finally on *News Today* here's a funny story to cheer you up on a Monday morning.

On Saturday night, Katie Parfitt, a nurse at a local hospital, came home from work. As soon as she opened the door, she realized that her cat, Joey, was behaving rather strangely. Instead of being happy to see her, he started attacking her, and then, when she sat down to have something to eat, Joey jumped onto the table and sat on her plate. Then he jumped down onto the floor and immediately went to sleep. He slept all night, snoring very loudly. Katie couldn't understand what the matter was with Joey – he had never behaved like this before. However, when she met her neighbor the next morning, the mystery was solved.

5 20

My neighbor told me that he was having dinner at a cafe on Saturday. Suddenly he saw my cat Joey walk in though the door – it was open because it was a hot day. And then one of the people spilled his drink on the floor, and Joey starting drinking it – he was probably thirsty. So, of course, when Joey got home he was completely drunk! I took him to the vet the next day, but luckily he's fine now.

5 21

Iris Hello Rosemary. How are you this morning?
Rosemary Hello Iris. I'm fine thanks, but you'll never guess what's happened. Jack and Emma have broken up!
Iris No! Jack and Emma from next door? That can't be true. I saw them last week, and they looked really happy.
Rosemary No, it's definitely true. I heard them shouting. They were having a terrible argument.
Iris No! When?
Rosemary Last night. After he came home from work.
Iris What did they say?
Rosemary Well, I wasn't really listening...
Iris Of course not.
Rosemary But I couldn't help hearing. She was talking so loudly, and of course, the walls are very thin.
Iris So what did they say?
Rosemary Well, she said that she was going to stay with her mother! She told him that she wouldn't come back.
Iris Ooh, how awful. What about the children?
Rosemary She said she'd taken them to her sister. I suppose she'll take them with her in the end. And anyway, then five minutes later, I saw her leaving the house with a suitcase!
Iris No! Why do you think she's leaving him? Is he seeing another woman?
Rosemary I don't know. Ooh, here's my bus.
Iris I have to go and tell Mrs. Jones from across the street. She always thought there was something... something strange about him...

5 22

Jack Hi, Emma. I'm back. Where are you?
Emma I'm upstairs in the bedroom. I'm packing.
Jack Why? Where are you going?
Emma I'm going to stay with my mom.
Jack What happened to her?
Emma She's had an accident. She fell on the street yesterday, and she's broken her leg.
Jack How awful. Poor thing. Can I help you with anything?
Emma Actually, yes. Could you get my small suticase in the closet?
Jack How long do you think you'll have to stay?
Emma I won't come back until the weekend, I don't think. I'll have to make sure she's OK. I've taken the children to my sister's for the night, and she'll take them school tomorrow morning. Can you pick them up after school?
Jack Of course I can honey. Now don't worry about anything. We'll be absolutely fine, and here's your suitcase.
Emma Thanks, dear. The taxi'll be here in five minutes.

1

1A word order in questions

questions with *do / does / did* in simple present and simple past

question word	auxiliary	subject	base form (= verb) 1 3
	Do	you	**live** with your parents?
	Did	you	**take** a vacation last year?
Where	**does**	your sister	**work**?
When	**did**	you	**start** studying English?
What	**did**	they	**talk** about?

- Use this word order:
  auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Did you go out last night?* or
  question word, auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Where did you go?*

questions with *be*

question word	*be*	subject	adjective, noun, etc. 1 4
	Are	you	hungry?
	Is	there	a bank near here?
	was	that	noise?
What	**are**	you	from?
Where	**were**	you	born?

- Make questions with the verb *be* by inverting the verb and the subject.
  She is a teacher. ***Is she*** a teacher?

1B simple present

	I / you / we / they	*he / she / it* 1 12
+	I usually **work** at home.	Holly **knows** me very well.
−	They **don't live** near here.	It **doesn't** often **rain** here.
?	**Do** you **speak** French?	**Does** Alice **like** jazz?
✓✗	Yes, I **do**. / No, I **don't**.	Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.

- Use the simple present for things you do every day / week / year, or for things that are generally true or always happen.
- Use *don't/doesn't* to make negative sentences and *do/does* to make questions.

spelling rules for the 3rd person -s (*he, she, it*)

base form	3rd person	spelling
work	works	add -s
study	studies	consonant + *y* > *ies*
finish	finishes	add -*es* after *ch, c, g, sh, s, z,* and *x*.
go / do	goes / does	add -*es*
have	has	change to -s

adverbs and expressions of frequency

1 We **often** go out on Friday night. 1 13
  She doesn't **usually** study on weekends.
  I'm **never** sick.
  He's **always** late for work.
2 She gets up early **every day**.
  We have English classes **twice a week**.

1 We often use the simple present with adverbs of frequency (*always, usually, often, sometimes, hardly ever, never*).
  - Adverbs of frequency go before the main verb.
  - Adverbs of frequency go after *be*.
    *She's **never** sick.* **NOT** ~~*She's sick never.*~~
  - Remember to use a + verb with *never*.
    It never rains. **NOT** ~~*It doesn't never rain.*~~
2 Expressions of frequency (*every day, once a week,* etc.) usually go at the end of a sentence.

1C present continuous: *be* + verb + *-ing*

1 A What **are you doing**? 1 22
  B **I'm sending** a message to Sarah.
2 My brother **is taking** a two-month vacation in the US.
3 In this picture the woman **is standing** near the window.

- Use the present continuous:
  1 for things that are happening now, at this moment.
  2 for temporary things that are happening now, this week, etc.
  3 to describe a picture.

	I	you / we / they		he / she / it	
+	**I'm working.**	You	**'re working.**	He	**'s working.**
−	**I'm not working.**	We	**aren't working.**	She	**isn't working.**
		They		It	

?✓✗	**Are** you **working**?	**Yes**, I **am**. / **No**, I'm **not**.
	Is he **working**?	**Yes**, he **is**. / **No**, he **isn't**.

spelling rules for the *-ing* form

base form	*-ing* form	spelling
cook	cook**ing**	add -*ing*
study	study**ing**	
live	liv**ing**	cut the final *e* and add -*ing*
run	run**ning**	double the final consonant and add -*ing*

simple present or present continuous?

A What **do you do?** B **I work** for Microsoft. 1 23
A What **are you doing**? B **I'm checking** my email.

- Use the simple present for things that are generally true or always happen.
- Use the present continuous for an action happening now or at this moment.
- We normally use verbs that describe states or feelings (non-action verbs), e.g., *want, need, like,* in the simple present, not continuous.

1A

a Put the word or phrase in the right place in the question.

How *old* are you? (old)
1 Where do you from? (come)
2 Where the train station? (is)
3 How often you read magazines? (do)
4 Where your friends from? (are)
5 Why you write to me? (didn't)
6 Do you often to the movies? (go)
7 What this word mean? (does)
8 What time did arrive? (your friends)
9 Does finish at 8:00? (the class)
10 Where were born? (you)

b Put the words in the right order to make questions.

you live where do ? *Where do you live?*
1 you a do have car ?
2 older is brother your you than ?
3 often he how to write does you ?
4 this time start does what class ?
5 Brazil from is friend your ?
6 languages how you many do speak ?
7 she born where was ?
8 last go where you summer did ?
9 father doctor your is a ?
10 come bus to you by school did ?

◀ p.5

1B

a Write sentences and questions with the simple present.

he / usually get up late [+] *He usually gets up late.*
1 Anna / like music [?]
2 my sister / have a lot of hobbies [+]
3 I / get along very well with my parents [-]
4 my brother / study at school [+]
5 my neighbors / have any children [-]
6 when / the movie start [?]
7 he / go out twice a week [+]
8 we / often talk about politics [-]
9 how often / you email your brother [?]
10 I / go on Facebook very often [-]

b Put the words in the right order.

go movies we often the to *We often go to the movies.*
1 always before go I bed 11:00 to
2 ever her Kate sees family hardly
3 Saturday never shopping on go we
4 a to I dentist year go twice the
5 in they breakfast the sometimes yard have
6 usually morning the we the listen in radio to
7 in day park every Alan the runs
8 after drink I coffee 4:00 never
9 often John to go doesn't movies the
10 visit I once my month a mom

◀ p.7

1C

a Write sentences with the present continuous.

It / rain [-] *It isn't raining.*
1 John / wear a shirt today! [+]
2 It's hot. Why / wear a coat [?]
3 Anna / sit next to Jane today [-]
4 Hey! You / stand on my foot! [+]
5 what book / you read [?]
6 we / think of you right now [+]
7 she / wear makeup [?]
8 they / make a big mistake [+]
9 your mother / shop at the mall [?]
10 she / live with her parents right now [-]

b Complete the sentences with the simple present or present continuous.

The girl in the painting *is playing* the guitar. (play)
1 My dog's not dangerous. He _____. (not bite)
2 Why _____ you _____ sunglasses? It _____! (wear, rain)
3 You can turn off the radio. I _____ to it. (not listen)
4 I _____ to go to the bank. I _____ any money. (need, not have)
5 Be careful! The baby _____ that pen in her mouth! (put)
6 **A** _____ you usually _____ on weekends? (cook)
B No, we normally _____ out. (eat)
7 **A** What _____ you _____ here? (do)
B I _____ for Emma. She's late, as usual. (wait)
8 I usually drink tea, but I _____ a coffee today. (want)
9 My sister _____ from 9:00 to 5:00. She's a secretary. (work)
10 We _____ in Chicago, but we _____ in Los Angeles right now. (live, stay)

◀ p.8

2

2A simple past: regular and irregular verbs

	regular	irregular (1 36)
[+]	I **stayed** with friends.	We **went** to Brazil on vacation.
[−]	I **didn't stay** in a hotel.	We **didn't go** to São Paulo.
[?]	**Did** you **stay** for the weekend?	**Did** you **go** to Rio?
[✓][✗]	Yes, I **did**.	No, we **didn't**.
Wh[?]	Where **did** you **stay**?	Why **did** you **go** there?

- Use the simple past to talk about finished actions in the past.
- The form of the simple past is the same for all persons.
- To make the simple past [+] of regular verbs add *-ed*. See the spelling rules in the chart.
- Many common verbs are irregular in the [+] simple past, e.g., *go* > ***went***, *see* > ***saw***. See **Irregular verbs** *p.164*.
- Use the base form after *didn't* for negatives and *Did...?* for questions.
- Remember:
  auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Did you go out last night?* or
  question word, auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Where did you go?*

spelling rules for regular verbs

base form	past	spelling
work stay	work**ed** stay**ed**	add *-ed*
like	lik**ed**	add *-d* if verb ends in *e*
study	stud**ied**	*y* > *-ied* after a consonant
stop	stop**ped**	if verb ends in consonant–vowel–consonant, double the final consonant

2B past continuous: *was / were* + verb + *-ing*

At 8:45 last Saturday I **was working** in my office. (1 39)
I **wasn't doing** anything important.
My friends **were having** breakfast. They **weren't working**.
A **Was** it **raining** when you got up? **B** No, **it wasn't**.
A What **were** you **doing** at 11 o'clock last night? **B** I **was watching** TV.

[+]	I / He / She / It	**was working.**	You / We / They	**were working.**
[−]	I / He / She / It	**wasn't working.**	You / We / They	**weren't working.**

[?][✓][✗]	**Was** he **working**?	**Yes**, he **was**. / **No**, he **wasn't**.
	Were they **working**?	**Yes**, they **were**. / **No**, they **weren't**.

- Use the past continuous to describe an action in progress at a specific moment in the past.
- We often use the past continuous to describe the situation at the beginning of a story or narrative.

simple past or past continuous?

I **was working** in my office when the boss **walked in**. (1 40)
I **was having** lunch when my sister **arrived**.

- Use the simple past for a completed action in the past.
- Use the past continuous for an action in progress before or at the time of the simple past action.

2C time sequencers

On our first date, we went to the movies. **After that** we started meeting every day. (1 46)
On Thursday I had an argument with my boss. **The next day** I decided to look for a new job.
We sat down to eat. **Two minutes later** the phone rang.
When I came out of the club, he was waiting for me.
The accident happened **when** I was crossing the street.

- We use time sequencers to say when or in what order things happen.
- We use *when* as a time sequencer and also to join two actions.
  I ***was watching*** TV ***when*** the phone ***rang***. (two verbs joined by *when*)

> ***then, after that***
> The most common way of linking consecutive actions is with *then* or *after that*, but **NOT** with *after*, e.g., *I got up and got dressed.* ***Then / After that*** *I made a cup of coffee.* **NOT** ~~*After I made a cup of coffee.*~~

connectors: *because, so, but, although*

because and *so*

She was driving fast **because** she was in a hurry. (reason) (1 47)
She was in a hurry, **so** she was driving fast. (result)

- Use *because* to express a reason.
- Use *so* to express a result.

but and *although*

She tried to stop the car, **but** she hit the man. (1 48)
Although she tried to stop the car, she hit the man.
She was very tired, **but** she couldn't sleep.
She couldn't sleep, **although** she was very tired.

- Use *but* and *although* to show a contrast.
- *Although* can go at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence.

2A

a Put the verbs in parentheses in the simple past.

Two summers ago we *took* (take) our vacation in Vancouver. We [1]_____ (drive) there from San Francisco, but our car [2]_____ (break) down on the freeway, and we [3]_____ (spend) the first night in Seattle. When we [4]_____ (get) to Vancouver, we [5]_____ (not can) find a good hotel – they [6]_____ (be) all full. We [7]_____ (not know) what to do, but finally we [8]_____ (find) a bed and breakfast, and we [9]_____ (stay) there for the week. We [10]_____ (see) the botanical gardens, [11]_____ (go) to an arts festival, and we [12]_____ (buy) a lot of souvenirs. We [13]_____ (want) to go to Victoria, but we [14]_____ (not have) enough time and it [15]_____ (be) too far away. The weather [16]_____ (not be) very good, and it [17]_____ (start) raining the day we [18]_____ (leave).

b Complete the questions in the simple past.

Where did you go on vacation last year?
We went to Orlando, Florida.

1 _____ a good time?
Yes, we had a great time.

2 _____ with?
I went with my family.

3 _____?
We stayed in a hotel.

4 _____ the plane ticket _____?
It cost $259.

5 _____ the weather like?
It was hot and sunny.

6 _____ at night?
We went to cafes and restaurants. ◀ p.13

2B

a Complete the sentences with a verb in the past continuous.

I *was eating* dinner, so I didn't answer the phone. (eat)

1 I took this photo when my wife _____ in the yard. (work)
2 He met his wife when he _____ in Japan. (live)
3 They _____ for us when we arrived. (not wait)
4 _____ she _____ a coat when she went out? (wear)
5 The sun _____ when I left for work. (shine)
6 What _____ you _____ at 7:30 last night? (do)
7 I _____ when you gave the instructions. (not listen)
8 We _____ TV when you called. (not watch)

b Put the verbs into the simple past or past continuous.

She *arrived* when we *were having* dinner. (arrive, have)

1 I _____ my arm when I _____ soccer. (break, play)
2 _____ you _____ fast when the police _____ you? (drive, stop)
3 It _____ when we _____ the restaurant (snow, leave)
4 I _____ the game because I _____. (not see, work)
5 When you _____ me, I _____ to my boss. (call, talk)
6 We _____ in the library when we _____. (study, meet)
7 _____ they _____ in Tokyo when they _____ their first baby? (live, have)

◀ p.14

2C

a Put the sentences in the right order.

a [ ] He told me he was a police officer and that they were looking for a thief.
b [ ] Then another man tried to do the same.
c [1] One day in 2011 I was standing in line for a bus.
d [ ] The next day I read the story in a newspaper.
e [ ] When the second man went in front of me, I told him to go and stand in line.
f [ ] A few seconds later, the first police officer got off the bus with a man.
g [ ] Suddenly a man ran in front of me and got on the bus.
h [ ] After that, a police car came and took the men away.

b Complete the sentences with *so*, *because*, *but*, or *although*.

We couldn't find a taxi, *so* we walked home.

1 _____ it was very cold, she wasn't wearing a coat.
2 I woke up in the night _____ there was a noise.
3 I called him, _____ his cell phone was turned off.
4 _____ she's very nice, she doesn't have many friends.
5 There was nothing on TV, _____ I went to bed.
6 All the cafes were full _____ it was a holiday.
7 She wanted to be a doctor, _____ she failed her exams.
8 The yard looked very beautiful, _____ I took a photograph.
9 _____ the team played well, it didn't win.

◀ p.16

3

3A *be going to*

1 I'**m going to** work for an NGO. (1) 57
He'**s going to** meet me at the airport.
2 I'm sure our favorite tennis players **are going to** lose tomorrow.
It'**s going to** rain tonight.

	I	you / we / they		he / she / it		
+	I'm going to	You We They	're going to	He She It	's going to	work for an NGO.
−	I'm not going to	You We They	aren't going to	He She It	isn't going to	work for an NGO.

?	✓✗
Are you **going to** work for an NGO? **Is** he **going to** work for an NGO?	**Yes**, I **am**. / **No**, I'm **not**. Yes, he **is**. / **No**, he **isn't**.

1 Use *be going to* + base form to talk about future plans or intentions.
2 We use *be going to* + base form to make a prediction when we know or can see that something is going to happen.
*It's winter there, so it'**s going to be** cold.*
*Look at that car! It'**s going to crash**.*

3B present continuous (future arrangements)

+ I'**m seeing** a friend tonight. (1) 64
She'**s arriving** at lunchtime.
− She **isn't leaving** until Friday.
They **aren't coming** to the party.
? What **are** you **doing** this evening?
Is she **meeting** us at the restaurant?

- We often use the present continuous with a future meaning, especially for future arrangements, i.e., for plans we have made at a fixed time or place in the future. Don't use the simple present for this. **NOT** ~~*I see some friends tonight.*~~

be going to or present continuous?
We can often use either with no difference in meaning, e.g., ***I'm going to see*** *Anna on Tuesday.* **OR** ***I'm seeing*** *Anna on Tuesday.*
It's very common to use the present continuous with the expressions *tonight, tomorrow, this weekend*, etc. and with verbs describing travel arrangements, e.g., *go, come, leave, arrive.*
I'm leaving *on Monday* is more common than ***I'm going to leave*** *on Monday.*

3C defining relative clauses with *who, that, where*

A cook is a person **who** makes food. (2) 5
That's the woman **who** won the lottery last year.
A clock is something **that** tells the time.
Is that the book **that** everybody's reading?
A post office is a place **where** you can buy stamps.
That's the restaurant **where** I had dinner last week.

- Use defining relative clauses to explain what a person, thing, or place is or does.
- Use *who* for a person, *that* for a thing, and *where* for a place.

that
You can use *that* instead of *who*.
*She's the girl **who** / **that** works with my brother.*
You can use *which* instead of that to talk about things.
*It's a thing **which** / **that** connects two computers.*

3A

a Complete with *going to* + a verb.

be cook do not go learn
not listen see stay take

What movie *are* you *going to see* tonight?

1 _____ your sister _____ Chinese?
2 You _____ in class 3 next year.
3 We _____ camping next summer. We _____ in a hotel.
4 We _____ a taxi to the airport.
5 I _____ a wonderful meal tonight.
6 You can talk, but I _____ to you.
7 What _____ you _____ when you leave school?

b Look at the pictures. Make sentences with *going to* + a verb.

be (x2) love rain

It's *going to rain*.

2 Not that one. It _____ too expensive.

1 We _____ late for work!

3 You _____ this book!

◀ p.21

3B

a Read the sentences. Write **N** for now or **F** for future.

[F] I'm meeting Joe at two o'clock.
1 [ ] I'm living in an apartment with two college friends.
2 [ ] We're coming back on Monday.
3 [ ] She's moving to Canada soon.
4 [ ] I'm waiting for the mail carrier.
5 [ ] I'm reading a really good book about science.
6 [ ] We're meeting Alicia and Kenji for lunch on Sunday.
7 [ ] Karl is arriving at 6 o'clock.
8 [ ] I'm studying for my math exam.

b Complete the dialogue between two apartmentmates.

A What *are you doing* (do)?
B I [1] _____ (pack) my suitcase.
A Why?
B Because I [2] _____ (fly) to Seattle at 8 o'clock tonight.
A Oh, I didn't know. Why [3] _____ (go) to Seattle?
B I [4] _____ (see) the boss of *VTech Solutions* tomorrow.
A Why [5] _____ (meet) him?
B I [6] _____ (work) on a project for him right now, and I need to discuss it with him.
A Oh, well have a good trip!

◀ p.23

3C

a Complete the definitions with *who*, *that*, or *where*.

A mail carrier is the person *who* brings you your mail.

1 An octopus is an animal _____ lives in the ocean and has eight legs.
2 A lawnmower is a machine _____ cuts the grass.
3 A waiter is the person _____ serves you in a cafe.
4 A changing room is a room _____ people try on clothes.
5 A bellhop is the person _____ helps you with your luggage.
6 Garlic is a kind of food _____ keeps vampires away.
7 A garage is a place _____ people fix cars.

b Write sentences with *who*, *that*, or *where*.

She / the woman / catch the same bus as me
She's the woman who catches the same bus as me.

1 That / the dog / always barks at night
2 That / the store / I bought my wedding dress
3 That / the actor / was in *Glee*
4 They / the children / live next door to me
5 This / the restaurant / they make great pizza
6 That / the switch / controls the air-conditioning
7 He / the teacher / teaches my sister
8 That / the room / we have our meetings
9 This / the light / is broken

◀ p.24

4

4A present perfect

I've finished my homework. 2 16
She's **cleaned** the kitchen.
He **hasn't done** the dishes.
A **Has she turned off** her phone? B No, **she hasn't**.

- We often use the present perfect to talk about the recent past, not saying exactly when things happened.
- We often use the present perfect to give news.
  *Mary's **had** her baby! A package **has arrived** for you.*

full form	contraction	negative	past participle
I **have**	I'**ve**	I **haven't**	
You **have**	You'**ve**	You **haven't**	
He / She / It **has**	He / She / It's	He / She / It **hasn't**	**finished** the exercise.
We **have**	We'**ve**	We **haven't**	
They **have**	They'**ve**	They **haven't**	

Have you **finished** the exercise? Yes, I **have**. / No, I **haven't**.
Has he **done** the homework? Yes, he **has**. / No, he **hasn't**.

- For regular verbs the past participle is the same as the simple past (+ *-ed*). For irregular verbs the past participle is sometimes the same as the simple past (e.g., *buy, bought, bought*) and sometimes different (e.g., *do, did, done*). See **Irregular verbs** *p.164*.

yet, already

1 A Have you done your homework **yet**? 2 17
B No, not **yet**. I haven't finished **yet**.
2 A Do you want to see this movie?
B No, I've **already** seen it three times.

- We often use *yet* and *already* with the present perfect.
  1 Use *yet* in [?] and [-] sentences to ask if something has happened or to say if it hasn't happened. Put *yet* at the end of the sentence.
  2 Use *already* in [+] sentences to say that something happened before now or earlier than expected. Put *already* before the main verb.

4B present perfect or simple past? (1)

Have you ever been to a costume party? 2 24
She's seen that movie twice.
I've never met Nina's husband.

- We often use the present perfect to talk about past experiences in our lives when we don't specify a time.

> ***been* and *gone***
> Compare the present perfect of *be* and *go*.
> *Mike has **been** to Paris.* = He went to Paris and came back.
> *Mike has **gone** to Paris.* = He's in Paris now.

present perfect or past simple?

A **Have you ever been** to Mexico? 2 25
B Yes, I **have**.
A When **did you go** there?
B I **went** last year.

A **Have you seen** his new movie?
B Yes, I **have**.
A What **did you think** of it?
B I **loved** it.

- Conversations often begin in the present perfect (with a general question) and then change to the simple past to ask for or give specific details, e.g., *when, what, where, who with*, etc.

4C *something, anything, nothing*, etc.

people 2 34

[+] **Somebody / Someone** has taken my pen!
[-] I didn't speak to **anybody / anyone**.
[?] Did **anybody / anyone** call?
[✗] No, **nobody / no one. Nobody / No one** called.

things

[+] I bought **something** for dinner.
[-] I didn't do **anything** on the weekend.
[?] Is there **anything** in the refrigerator?
[✗] No, **nothing**. There's **nothing** in the refrigerator.

places

[+] Let's go **somewhere** this weekend.
[-] We didn't go **anywhere** this summer.
[?] Is there **anywhere** to park?
[✗] No, **nowhere**. There's **nowhere** to park.

- Use *somebody / someone, something, somewhere* with a [+] verb when you don't say exactly who, what, or where.
- Use *anybody / anyone, anything, anywhere* in questions or with a [-] verb.
  *I **didn't** do **anything** last night.* **NOT** ~~*I didn't do nothing.*~~
- Use *nobody / no one, nothing, nowhere* in short answers or in sentences with a [+] verb.

4A

a Write sentences in the present perfect.

He / clean the car [+] *He's cleaned the car.*

1 She / buy a new jacket [+]
2 He / find a job yet [-]
3 / you speak to Mr. Jackson [?]
4 We / find a great hotel [+]
5 They / finish eating [-]
6 / you see Peter this morning [?]
7 / you do your homework this week [?]
8 We / reply to Ms. Jones's email yet [-]

b Write sentences or questions with *already* or *yet*.

He / arrive. (already) *He's already arrived.*

1 I / have / breakfast. (already)
2 / you / finish / your homework? (yet)
3 The movie / start. (already)
4 I / not meet / his wife. (yet)
5 They / buy their math books. (already)
6 You're too late. He / go / home. (already)
7 / you speak / to him? (yet)
8 I / not read / his new book. (yet)

◀ p.29

4B

a Complete with the verb in the present perfect.

Have you *done* the grocery shopping today? (do)

1 _____ you ever _____ clothes from that store? (buy)
2 I _____ always _____ a pair of designer shoes. (want)
3 I _____ the newspaper today. (not read)
4 We _____ to the new shopping mall yet. (not be)
5 _____ your brother _____ abroad all his life? (live)
6 They _____ to live in South America. (go)
7 She _____ before. (not fly)
8 James _____ his girlfriend's family yet. (not meet)
9 _____ you _____ in this restaurant before? (eat)
10 Jane _____ to the gym. She'll be back in an hour. (go)

b Complete the dialogue with the present perfect or simple past.

A Oh, no! I'*ve seen* this movie before! (see)
B Really? When [1] _____ it? (see)
A I [2] _____ to the movies in March, and it was in the theaters then. (go)
B Oh, never mind. I [3] _____ to the movies in ages. The last movie I [4] _____ was *Mamma Mia!* (not be, see)
A [5] _____ it? (enjoy)
B Of course! I [6] _____ it! (love)

c Complete with *been* or *gone*.

"Where's Rob" "He's *gone* to the basketball game."

1 The kids aren't here. They've all _____ out.
2 Have you ever _____ to the swimming pool in town?
3 I haven't _____ to Sue's new apartment yet.
4 My sister has _____ to teach in Thailand.
5 Dad's _____ to the grocery store. The refrigerator is full.

◀ p.31

4C

a Complete with *something*, *anything*, *nothing*, etc.

Are you doing *anything* tonight?

1 Did you meet _____ last night?
2 _____ called when you were out. They're going to call back later.
3 I've seen your wallet _____, but I can't remember where.
4 There's _____ interesting on TV tonight. Let's go out.
5 Did _____ call while I was out?
6 Did you go _____ exciting on the weekend?
7 I bought you _____ really nice for your birthday!
8 I rang the doorbell, but _____ answered.
9 We went shopping, but we didn't buy _____.
10 There's _____ more expensive than New York City!

b Answer with *Nobody*, *Nowhere*, or *Nothing*.

1 What did you do last night? _____
2 Where did you go yesterday? _____
3 Who did you see? _____

c Answer the questions in **b** with a complete sentence.

1 I didn't do _____.
2 _____.
3 _____.

◀ p.32

5

5A comparatives

1 My brother's **older than** me. (2) 40
It's **more dangerous** to ride a bike **than** to drive.
2 People walk **more quickly than** in the past.
3 I'm **less relaxed** this year **than** I was last year.
4 The service in this restaurant isn't **as good as** it was.
She doesn't drive **as fast as** her brother.

- To compare two people, places, things, or actions use:
  1 comparative adjectives.
  2 comparative adverbs (for actions).
  3 *less* + adjective or adverb.
  4 (*not*) *as* + adjective / adverb + *as*.

comparative adjectives: regular

adjective	comparative	
short	short**er**	one syllable: add *-er*
big	big**ger**	one vowel + one consonant: double final consonant
busy	bus**ier**	consonant + *y*: *y* + *-ier*
relaxed	**more** relaxed	two or more syllables: *more* + adjective

comparative adjectives: irregular

adjective	comparative
good	**better**
bad	**worse**
far	**farther / further**

adjective	comparative
stressed	**more stressed**
tired	**more tired**
bored	**more bored**

comparative adverbs: regular

quickly	**more** quickly
slowly	**more** slowly

irregular

hard	**harder**
well	**better**
badly	**worse**

Comparatives with pronouns
After comparative + *than* or *as...as*, we use an object pronoun (*me, her*, etc.) or a subject pronoun + auxiliary verb, e.g.,
My brother's taller than ***me****. My brother's taller than* ***I am****.*
He's not as intelligent as ***her****. He's not as intelligent as* ***she is****.*

5B superlatives

1 It's **the dirtiest** city in the US. (2) 43
It's **the most popular** vacation destination in the world.
2 It's **the most beautiful** city **I've ever been to**.
It's **the best** movie **I've seen** this year.

adjective	comparative	superlative
cold	colder	**the** coldest
hot	hotter	**the** hottest
pretty	prettier	**the** prettiest
beautiful	**more** beautiful	**the most** beautiful
good	**better**	**the best**
bad	**worse**	**the worst**
far	**farther / further**	**the farthest / the furthest**

1 Use *the* + superlative adjective to say which is the biggest, etc. in a group.
- After superlatives, we use *in* + names of places or singular words for groups of people, e.g.,
  It's ***the noisiest*** *city* ***in*** *the world.*

2 We often use *the* + superlative adjective with the present perfect + *ever*.

5C quantifiers

too much, too many, too

1 I'm stressed. I have **too much** work. (2) 52
He talks **too much**.
2 My diet is unhealthy. I eat **too many** cookies.
3 I don't want to go out. I'm **too** tired.

- Use *too much, too many, too* to say "more than is good."
  1 Use *too much* + uncountable noun (e.g., *coffee, time*) or after a verb.
  2 Use *too many* + countable noun (e.g., *cookies, people*).
  3 Use *too* + adjective **NOT** ~~*I'm too much tired*~~.

enough

1 Do you eat **enough** vegetables? (2) 53
I don't drink **enough** water.
2 She doesn't sleep **enough**.
3 My refrigerator isn't big **enough**.
I don't go to bed early **enough**.

1 Use *enough* before a noun to mean "all that is necessary."
2 Use *enough* after a verb with no object.
3 Use *enough* after an adjective or adverb.

5A

a Write sentences with a comparative adjective or adverb + *than*.

New York is *more expensive than* Miami. (expensive)

1 Modern computers are much _____ the early ones. (fast)
2 My sister is _____ me. (tall)
3 I'm _____ this week _____ last week. (busy)
4 San Francisco is _____ from Los Angeles _____ San Diego. (far)
5 I thought the third *Men in Black* movie was _____ the first two. (bad)
6 Manchester United played _____ Arsenal. (good)
7 The history exam was _____ the math exam. (hard)
8 My new job is _____ my old one. (boring)
9 My new apartment is _____ my old one. (big)
10 I'm not lazy – I just work _____ you! (slowly)

b Rewrite the sentences so they mean the same. Use *as... as*.

James is stronger than Clive.
Clive isn't *as strong as James*.

1 Adam is shorter than Jerry.
Jerry isn't _____.
2 Your bag is nicer than mine.
My bag isn't _____.
3 Tokyo is bigger than London.
London isn't _____.
4 Tennis is more popular than volleyball.
Volleyball isn't _____.
5 Children learn languages faster than adults.
Adults don't _____.
6 I work harder than you.
You don't _____.
7 The Lakers played better than the Knicks.
The Knicks didn't _____.

◀ p.37

5B

a Complete the sentences with the superlative.

Is this *the biggest* city in the world? (big)

1 Thais are _____ people I've ever met. (polite)
2 Yesterday was _____ day of the year. (hot)
3 This is _____ time to drive to the city. (bad)
4 She's _____ girl at school. (friendly)
5 This is _____ part of the exam. (important)
6 _____ time to visit New England is the fall. (good)
7 Ulan Bator is one of _____ cities in the world. (polluted)
8 _____ I've ever flown is to Bali. (far)
9 That's definitely _____ movie I've ever seen. (funny)
10 Rob's daughters are all pretty, but I think Emily is _____. (pretty)

b Write sentences with a superlative + *ever* + the present perfect.

It / good movie / I / see
It's the best movie I've ever seen.

1 It / hot country / I be to
2 She / unfriendly person / I / meet
3 It / easy exam / he / take
4 They / expensive pants / I / buy
5 It / long movie / I / watch
6 He / attractive man / I / see
7 It / bad meal / I / eat
8 He / interesting teacher / I / have
9 It / exciting job / we / do

◀ p.38

5C

a Circle the correct form.

How *much* / *many* milk do you drink?

1 I eat *too* / *too much* chocolate.
2 I eat *too much* / *too many* potato chips.
3 I don't drink *enough water* / *water enough*.
4 I can't come. I am *too busy* / *too much busy*.
5 You work *too much* / *too many*.
6 I don't have *enough time* / *time enough*.
7 I don't *go out enough* / *enough go out*.
8 She's *too lazy* / *too much lazy*.

b Complete the sentences with *too*, *too much*, *too many*, or *enough*.

You eat *too much* red meat. It isn't good for you.

1 I'm not very fit. I don't exercise _____.
2 I can't walk to school. It's _____ far.
3 There are _____ cars on the streets today.
4 I spend _____ time on the computer – it gives me headaches.
5 I don't sleep _____ – only five or six hours, but I really need eight.
6 I was _____ sick to go to work yesterday.
7 There were _____ people at the party, so it was impossible to dance.
8 I always have _____ work and not _____ free time.

◀ p.41

6

6A *will / won't* (predictions)

A I'm seeing Jane at six. **B** **She'll be** late. 3 4
The movie's in French. **We won't understand** anything.
It's a great book. I'm sure **you'll like** it.
I don't think **it'll rain** tomorrow.

+		−	
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**'ll** be late.	I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**won't be** late.

Contractions: *'ll = will; won't = will not*

?			✓			✗		
Will	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	be late?	**Yes,**	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**will.**	**No,**	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**won't.**

- We often use *will / won't* + base form for future predictions, i.e., to say things we think, guess, or know about the future.
- We often use *I think / I don't think* + *will*.
  ***I think** he'll **fail** the exam.* ***I don't think** he'll **pass** the exam.* **NOT** ~~*I think he won't pass.*~~

> ***be going to* for predictions**
> We can also use *be going to* to predict something you know or can see is going to happen (see **3A**), e.g.,
> *Look at the clouds. It'**s going to** rain.*
> *They're playing very well. I'm sure they'**re going to** win.*

6B *will / won't* (decisions, offers, promises)

decisions 3 11
I **won't stay** for dinner. I think I'**ll go** home early.

offers
I'**ll help** you with your homework. I'**ll open** the door for you.

promises
I'**ll** always **love** you. I **won't tell** anybody.

- Use *will / won't* + base form for making decisions, offering, and promising.
  ***I'll help** you with those bags.* **NOT** ~~*I help you.*~~
- In ? sentences with *I* and *we*, *shall* (and not *will*) is sometimes used to offer to do something or to make a suggestion, but this is not a common use.
  Shall we go for a walk?

6C review of verb forms: present, past, and future

tense	example	use 3 19
simple present	I **live** downtown. She **doesn't smoke**.	things that happen always or usually
present continuous	He**'s looking** for a new job.	things that are happening now or in the near future
	I**'m leaving** tomorrow.	things that we have arranged for the future
simple past	We **saw** a good movie last night. We **didn't do** anything yesterday.	finished actions in the past
past continuous	He **was working** in Chiang Mai. What **were** you **doing** at 7:00?	actions that were in progress at a past time
be going to + base form	I**'m going to see** Tom tonight.	future plans
	Look! It**'s going to rain**.	predictions when we know / can see what's going to happen
will / won't + base form	You**'ll love** New York.	predictions
	I**'ll call** her later.	instant decisions
	I**'ll help** you.	offers
	I**'ll pay** you back tomorrow.	promises
present perfect	I**'ve finished** the book.	recently finished actions (we don't say when)
	Have you **ever been** to Iran?	past experiences

6A

a Write sentences and questions with *will / won't*. Use contractions where you can.

[-] it / be easy to pass *It won't be easy to pass.*
1 [+] I think they / lose the game
2 [?] the meeting / be long
3 [-] she / get the job – she's not qualified
4 [?] you / see him at work later
5 [+] I don't want to go. it / be impossible to park
6 [-] you / like that book
7 [+] I think she / love the present I bought her
8 [-] there / be a lot of traffic in the morning
9 [+] you / find a good job, I'm sure
10 [+] everything / be OK, so there's no need to worry

b Complete with *will* + a verb from the list.

be (2) get like pass snow

A Do you think the traffic *will be* bad?
B No, because it's a holiday today.
1 **A** Do you like this band?
B Yes, I think they _____ famous one day.
2 **A** Is this a good movie.
B Yes, I'm sure you _____ it.
3 **A** Do you think it _____?
B No, it's not cold enough.
4 **A** What do you think I _____ for my birthday?
B I don't know. What did you ask for?
5 **A** I'm so worried about the exam!
B Don't worry. I'm sure you _____.

◀ p.44

6B

a Match the sentences.

It's hot in here. [G]
1 I'm thirsty. [ ]
2 I have a headache. [ ]
3 This exercise is hard. [ ]
4 I'm hungry. [ ]
5 These bags are heavy. [ ]
6 I left my wallet at home. [ ]
7 I need that photo urgently. [ ]
8 We don't have any milk. [ ]

A I'll help you with it.
B I'll make you a sandwich.
C I'll carry one for you.
D I'll lend you some money.
E I'll buy some on my way home.
F I'll send it by email now.
G I'll open the window.
H I'll turn off the music.
I I'll get you a glass of water.

b Complete the sentences with *will / won't* + a verb.

buy call forget get have help pay take tell

A What would you like? **B** *I'll have* the fish.
1 **A** I can't do this crossword.
B _____ you.
2 **A** It's a secret.
B I _____ anyone, I promise.
3 **A** When will I hear from you again?
B I _____ you tonight.
4 **A** Can I borrow $50?
B When _____ you _____ me back?
5 **A** It's my birthday next week.
B Don't worry. I _____.
6 **A** I feel sick.
B I _____ you home.
7 **A** This chocolate you bought isn't very good.
B Yes, I know. I _____ it again.
8 **A** These shoes are too small.
B I _____ a bigger pair for you, ma'am.

◀ p.46

6C

a Complete the questions with one word.

Where *do* you usually have lunch?
I didn't see you at work last week. *Were* you sick?
1 _____ you often remember your dreams?
2 _____ you listen to the game on the radio last night?
3 Who do you think _____ win the election next year?
4 _____ your brother like rock music?
5 What _____ you going to watch on TV tonight?
6 _____ it snowing when you left?
7 Were you at the party last night? I _____ see you.
8 _____ you been to the supermarket?
9 _____ the movie finished yet?

b Put the verb in the right form.

A What *are* we *doing* tonight? (do)
B We [1]_____ dinner with Diego and Luz. (have)
A But we [2]_____ dinner with them last week! (have)
B Yes, but they [3]_____ to tell us some good news. (want)
A Oh, OK then. [4]I _____ some flowers. (buy)
B It's 8 o'clock! Where [5]_____ you _____? (be)
A I'm sorry. When I [6]_____ home, I [7]_____ to buy the flowers. And then I [8]_____ Mark in the store… (walk, stop, see)
B Well, hurry up. We [9]_____ late! (be)
A It's OK. I [10]_____ a taxi, and I'll be ready in five minutes. (already call)

◀ p.49

7

7A uses of the infinitive

1 I need **to buy** some new clothes. 3 24
Try **not to talk** about politics.
2 It'll be nice **to meet** your parents.
It's important **not to be** late.
3 I don't know where **to go** or what **to do**.
4 **A** Why did you go to the party?
B **To meet** new people.
I went to the party **to meet** new people.

- Use the infinitive:
  1 after some verbs, e.g., *want, need, would like*, etc. See **Verb forms** *p.158*.
  2 after adjectives.
  3 after question words, e.g., *what, where, when*, etc.
  4 to say why you do something.
  I came to this school ***to learn*** *English.* **NOT** *~~for learn English~~.*

Base form
Remember that we use the base form after auxiliary verbs (*do / does / didn't*) and after most modal verbs (*can, could, will, would*, etc.), e.g., ***Do*** *you* ***live*** *near here?* ***Can*** *you* ***help*** *me?* *I* ***won't forget***. *What* ***would*** *you* ***do***?

7B uses of the gerund (verb + *-ing*)

1 **Eating** outside in the summer makes me feel good. 3 28
My idea of happiness is **getting up** late and **not going** to work.
2 I love **reading** in bed.
I hate **not getting** to the airport early.
3 I'm thinking of **buying** a new car.
He left without **saying** goodbye.

- The gerund is the base form of the verb + *ing*. It can be affirmative (e.g., *going*) or negative (e.g., *not going*).
- Use the gerund:
  1 as the subject or object of a sentence.
  2 after some verbs, e.g., *like, love, hate, enjoy*, etc. See **Verb forms** p.158.
  3 after prepositions.
- Remember the spelling rules for the *-ing* form. See **1C** *p.126*.

7C *have to, don't have to, must, must not, can't*

have to, don't have to

[+] I **have to** get up at seven every day. 3 34
She **has to** speak English at work.
[−] We **don't have to** wear a uniform at this school.
He **doesn't have to** work on Saturdays.
[?] **Do** I **have to** buy a grammar book?
What time **does** she **have to** get up in the morning?

- Use *have to* + verb (base form) to talk about rules and obligations.
- Use *don't have* to + verb (base form) to say that there is no obligation, or that something is not necessary.
- Use *do / does* to make questions and negatives. ***Do*** *I have to go?* **NOT** *~~Have I to go?~~*
- Don't contract *have* or *has*. *I* ***have to*** *go.* **NOT** *~~I've to go.~~*

must / must not / can't

[+] You **must** do your homework tonight. 3 35
She **must** clean up her room before she goes out.
[−] You **must not** leave your bags here.
You **can't** bring food into the library.

- Use *must* + verb (base form) to talk about rules and obligations.
- Use *can't / must not* + base form to say something is prohibited or to state a rule.
- The words *can't* and *must not* have similar meanings, but *can't* is more common in speaking. You can also use *cannot*.
- The verbs *must / must not* are the same for all persons.
- The verb *must* is not often used in questions (*have to* is more common).

must* and *have to
Must and *have to* are very similar, but have to is more common, especially in speaking. Must is often used in official forms, notices, and signs.

must not* and *don't have to
Must not and *don't have to* have completely different meanings. Compare:
You ***must not*** *go.* = You can't go. It's prohibited.
You ***don't have to*** *go.* = You can go if you want to, but it's not obligatory / necessary.

Impersonal *you*
We often use *have to* and *must* with impersonal *you* (*you* = people in general), e.g.,
You ***have to*** *wear a seatbelt in a car. You* ***can't*** *take photos in the museum.*

7A

a Match the sentence halves.

Be ready [B]
1 Do we need [ ]
2 In some countries, it's important [ ]
3 I know you're tired, but try [ ]
4 We were late, so Tomo offered [ ]
5 It's difficult [ ]

A to drive us to the train station.
B ~~to show your passport at check-in.~~
C not to forget people's names in a big class.
D to dress correctly in public.
E to change our money at the airport?
F not to fall asleep during the movie!

b Complete the sentences with an affirmative or negative infinitive.

do | not drive | go | ~~have~~ | learn | look for | not make | meet

I'm planning *to have* a party next week.
1 **A** Hi, I'm Ji Su.
B I'm Rosaria. Nice _____ you.
2 What do you want _____ tonight?
3 I need _____ to the store. I don't have any bread or milk.
4 Try _____ a noise. Your father's asleep.
5 I'd really like _____ how to drive.
6 Be careful _____ too fast on the way home – the roads are icy.
7 He's decided _____ a new job.

◀ p.53

7B

a Complete the sentences with a verb in the list in the *-ing* form.

be | do | practice | remember | study | swim | teach | text | travel

I really enjoy *doing* yoga. It makes me feel great!
1 One thing that always makes me happy is _____ in the ocean.
2 You can't learn to play a musical instrument well without _____ regularly.
3 My mother's very bad at _____ names.
4 _____ teenagers is very hard work.
5 My sister spends hours on the phone _____ her friends.
6 I hate _____ the first to arrive at parties.
7 _____ by train is usually cheaper than by plane.
8 I'll go on _____ for as long as I can – I love being a student!

b Put the verbs in the *-ing* form or base form.

I like *listening* to the radio in the mornings. (listen)
1 _____ Pilates is good for your health. (do)
2 We've decided _____ a vacation this year. (not take)
3 We won't take the car. It's impossible _____. (park)
4 I'm not very good at _____ maps. (read)
5 You can borrow the car if you promise _____ slowly. (drive)
6 Has it stopped _____? (rain)
7 I don't mind _____, but I don't like _____ the dishes. (cook, do)
8 I hate _____ early in the morning. (get up)

◀ p.54

7C

a Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have to*.

I *don't have to* go to school on Saturdays
1 Janice _____ study very hard – she has exams soon.
2 You _____ stop your car at a red light.
3 _____ your sister _____ go to Los Angeles for her job interview?
4 _____ you _____ to finish this now?
5 We _____ get up early tomorrow. Our flight leaves at 6:30.
6 Will _____ work today – his store is closed.
7 I _____ go now. It's very late.
8 _____ we _____ go to bed? It's only 10 o'clock!

b Circle the correct form, *have to, don't have to, must, must not,* or *can't*. Check ✓ if both forms are possible.

[ ] We *don't have to* / *must not* go to work next week. It's a holiday.
1 [ ] You *don't have to* / *must not* touch the oven. It's hot.
2 [ ] Do you *have to* / *must* send a photo with your passport form?
3 [ ] The concert is free. You *don't have to* / *can't* pay.
4 [ ] I'm late for a meeting. I *have to* / *must* go now.
5 [ ] You *don't have to* / *must not* leave the door open – the dog will get out.
6 [ ] You *don't have to* / *must not* come if you don't want to. I can go by myself.
7 [ ] You *can't* / *don't have to* use this computer—it's broken.
8 [ ] You *don't have to* / *can't* be very tall to play soccer.

◀ p.56

8

8A *should / shouldn't*

You **should** wear a suit to the interview. (3) 46
I think you **should** change your job.
I don't think you **should** speak to her.
He's very stressed. He **shouldn't** work so hard.
You **shouldn't** drink coffee in the evening. It'll keep you awake.

- Use *should / shouldn't* + verb (base form) to give somebody advice or say what you think is the right thing to do.
- *should / shouldn't* is the same for all persons.
- We often use *I think you should…* or *I don't think you should…* **NOT** ~~*I think you shouldn't…*~~

> ***ought to***
> You can also use *ought to* instead of *should* e.g., *You **ought to** wear a suit.*
> We don't usually use *ought to* in the negative form.

8B first conditional: *if* + present, *will / won't*

1 **If** I **miss** the last bus, I'**ll take** a taxi. (4) 2
If you **tell** her the truth, she **won't believe** you.
What **will** you **do if** he **doesn't call** you?
2 **If** you **don't go**, she **won't be** very happy.
She **won't be** very happy **if** you **don't go**.
3 **If** you **miss** the last bus, **take** a taxi.
If you **miss** the last bus, you **can take** a taxi.

1 Use *if* + present to talk about a possible situation and *will / won't* + base form to talk about the consequence.
2 The *if* clause can come first or second. If the *if* clause comes first, we usually put a comma before the next clause.
3 You can also use the imperative or *can* + base from instead of *will* + base form in the other clause.

If I miss the last bus, I'll take a taxi.

8C possessive pronouns

Whose coat is it? It's my coat. (4) 12
It's **mine**.
Whose jacket is it? It's your jacket.
It's **yours**.
Whose phone is it? It's his phone.
It's **his**.
Whose bag is it? It's her bag. It's **hers**.
Whose dog is it? It's our dog. It's **ours**.
Whose house is it? It's their house.
It's **theirs**.

- Use possessive pronouns to talk about possession. *Is it **yours**? Yes, it's **mine**.*
- Use *whose* to ask about possession. ***Whose** book is it? **Whose** is that bag?*
- Don't use possessive pronouns with a noun. **NOT** ~~*It's mine book.*~~
- Don't use *the* with possessive pronouns, e.g., *Is this **yours**?* **NOT** ~~*Is this the yours?*~~

pronouns and possessive adjectives overview

subject pronouns		object pronouns		possessive adjectives			possessive pronouns	
I	can come.	She loves	me.	This is	my	seat.	It's	mine.
You			you		your			yours
He			him		his			his
She			her		her			hers
It			it		its			its
We			us		our			ours
They			them		their			theirs

8A

a Complete with *should* or *shouldn't*.

You *should* stop smoking.

1 You _____ work really long hours every day.
2 You _____ lose a little bit of weight.
3 You _____ eat more fruit and vegetables.
4 You _____ put so much sugar in your coffee.
5 You _____ start exercising.
6 You _____ drink less soda.
7 You _____ drink more water.
8 You _____ go to bed so late.

b Complete the sentences with *should* or *shouldn't* + a verb in the list.

drive go ~~leave~~ relax spend study take walk wear

We *should leave* early. It's going to start snowing soon.

1 You _____ a scarf. It's really cold today.
2 I _____ this afternoon. I have an exam tomorrow.
3 You _____ alone in that part of the city. Take a taxi.
4 She _____ more. She's very stressed.
5 You _____ so fast at night – the roads are dangerous.
6 You _____ to bed. You look tired.
7 Parents _____ more time with their children.
8 We _____ a break yet – we only started work at 10:00.

◀ p.61

8B

a Match the sentence halves.

If you leave now, [C]

1 The ticket will be cheaper [ ]
2 If I don't see you this afternoon, [ ]
3 You'll learn more quickly [ ]
4 If you get that new job, [ ]
5 You won't pass your driving test [ ]
6 If I lend you this book, [ ]

A if you don't take enough lessons.
B will you give it back to me soon?
C ~~you'll catch the 8:00 train.~~
D if you travel after 9:00.
E if you come to every class.
F will you earn more money?
G I'll call you this evening.

b Complete with the correct form of the verbs.

If we *start* walking, the bus *will come*. (start, come)

1 If you _____ me your secret, I _____ anybody else. (tell, not tell)
2 If I _____ it down, I _____ it. (not write, not remember)
3 _____ you _____ me if you _____ any news? (call, get)
4 She _____ you if you _____ her nicely. (help, ask)
5 I _____ you if I _____ from Alex. (call, hear)
6 You _____ your friends if you _____ to Paris. (miss, move)
7 If you _____ carefully, you _____ everything. (listen, understand)
8 The boss _____ very happy if you _____ late for work. (not be, be)
9 I _____ you home if you _____ me directions. (drive, give)

◀ p.62

8C

a Circle the correct form.

Whose car is that? It's *her* / *hers*.

1 This isn't *my* / *mine* pen. It's Susan's.
2 I think this book is *your* / *yours*.
3 This isn't your suitcase. It's *ours* / *our*.
4 Where's Mary? I think these are *her* / *hers* gloves.
5 These keys are *mine* / *the mine*.
6 They showed us all *theirs* / *their* vacation photographs.
7 These seats are *theirs* / *their*, not ours. We're over there.
8 Is this *yours* / *your* bag?
9 This isn't my jacket. It's *her* / *hers*.

b Complete the sentences with a pronoun or possessive adjective.

This isn't my coffee. It's yours. Where's *mine*?

1 **A** Is that her car?
B No, it's her boyfriend's. _____ is a white Ford.
2 Maya has a new boyfriend, but I haven't met _____ yet.
3 Look. Here's a photo of Alex and Kim with _____ new baby.
4 We've finished paying for our house, so it's _____ now.
5 These are our tickets. Can you give Maria and Marta _____?
6 We're very lucky. Our parents bought this dog for _____.
7 We both love gardening. Would you like to see _____ garden?
8 New York City is famous for _____ tall buildings.

◀ p.65

9

9A second conditional: *if* + past, *would / wouldn't*

1 **If** a bull **attacked** me, I'**d run** away. 4 16
If you **didn't go** to bed so late, you **wouldn't be** so tired in the morning.
Would you **take** the manager's job **if** they **offered** it to you?
2 **If** I **had** more time, I'**d do** more exercise.
I'**d do** more exercise **if** I **had** more time.
3 **If** we **went** by car, we **could stop** at places on the way.

1 Use *if* + past to talk about an imaginary or hypothetical future situation and *would / wouldn't* + verb to talk about the consequence.
- *would / wouldn't* is the same for all persons.
- Contractions: *'d = would* (*I'd, you'd, he'd*, etc.); *wouldn't = would not*.

2 The *if* clause can come first or second. If the *if* clause comes first, we usually put a comma before the next clause.
3 You can also use *could* + base form instead of *would* + base form in the other clause.

be in second conditionals
With the verb *be* you can use *were* (instead of *was*) after *I / he / she / it*, e.g.,
If Jack ***was / were*** *here, he'd know what to do.*

Use *were* (not *was*) in the expression *If I* ***were*** *you,...*
We often use this expression for advice, e.g., ***If I were you****, I wouldn't take that job.*

first or second conditional?

Compare the first and second conditionals.
- Use the **first conditional** for **possible** future situations.
  If I ***don't have to*** *work tomorrow,* ***I'll help*** *you.*
  (= It's a possibility. Maybe I will help you.)
- Use the **second conditional** for **imaginary** or **hypothetical** situations.
  If I ***didn't have to*** *work tomorrow,* ***I'd help*** *you.*
  (= It's a hypothetical situation. I have to work, so I can't help you.)

9B present perfect + *for* or *since*

A Where do you live now? 4 21
B In Tokyo.
A **How long have you lived** there?
B **I've lived** there **for** twenty years.

A Where do you work?
B In an elementary school.
A **How long have you worked** there?
B **I've worked** there **since** 2005.

- Use the present perfect + *for* or *since* to talk about actions and states that started in the past and are still true now.
  I've lived *in Tokyo* ***for*** *twenty years.* = I came to live in Tokyo twenty years ago, and I live in Tokyo now.
- Don't use the simple present in this type of sentence, e.g., **NOT** ~~*I live in Tokyo for twenty years.*~~
- Use *How long...?* to ask questions about the duration of an action or a state.

for or *since*?

- Use *for* + a period of time, e.g., ***for*** *two weeks,* ***for*** *ten years,* ***for*** *a long time*, etc.
  I've had this car ***for*** *three months.*
- Use *since* with the beginning of a period of time, e.g., ***since*** *1980,* ***since*** *last June*, etc.
  I've been afraid of spiders ***since*** *I was a child.*

9C present perfect or simple past? (2)

1 **A** How long **was** Bob Marley a musician? 4 28
B He **was** a musician for twenty years.
A How many Grammys **did** he **win**?
B He **didn't win** any.
2 **A** How long **has** Ziggy Marley **been** a musician?
B He'**s been** a musician since he was ten.
A How many Grammys **has** he **won**?
B He'**s won** four.

1 Use the **simple past** to talk about a finished period of time in the past.
2 Use the **present perfect** to talk about a period of time from the past until now.
- Compare the simple past and present perfect.
  Jack ***was*** *married for ten years.* = Jack is not married now. He's divorced or dead.
  Jack ***has been*** *married for ten years.* = Jack is married now.

9A

a Match the sentence halves.

You'd feel much better [A]
1 I'd enjoy the weekend more [ ]
2 If it's sunny tomorrow, [ ]
3 Would you wear it [ ]
4 If we learned Portuguese, [ ]
5 I wouldn't work [ ]
6 If I went to live in Tokyo, [ ]

A ~~if you did some exercise.~~
B would you come to visit me?
C if I bought it for you?
D we could go to the beach.
E if I didn't have to work on Saturday.
F we could go and work in Brazil.
G if I didn't need the money.

b Complete with the correct form of the verbs.

If I *found* a good job, I *would move* to the US. (find, move)
1 We _____ the house if it _____ a yard. (buy, have)
2 If you _____ Indian food, I'm sure you _____ it. (try, like)
3 You _____ more if you _____ harder. (learn, work)
4 If we _____ a car, we _____ drive up to the mountains. (rent, can)
5 We _____ our son more often if he _____ nearer. (see, live)
6 I _____ to that restaurant if I _____ you – it's very expensive. (not go, be)
7 I _____ you to the airport if my mom _____ the car. (take, not have)
8 I really like riding a bike, but I _____ my bike to work if I _____ a car. (not ride, have)
9 _____ you _____ your country if you _____ a well-paid job abroad? (leave, get)
10 I love living here. I _____ happy if I _____ leave. (not be, have to)

◀ p.68

9B

a Write questions with *How long* and the present perfect.

you / be married *How long have you been married?*
1 you / be frightened of clowns _____?
2 your sister / have her car _____?
3 you / live here _____?
4 your dad / be a teacher _____?
5 you / know your best friend _____?
6 Britain / be in the EU _____?
7 you / have your cat _____?
8 he / work for the same company _____?

b Answer the questions in **a**. Use the present perfect + *for* or *since*.

I *'ve been married for* 20 years.
1 I _____ I was a child.
2 She _____ three years.
3 I _____ a long time.
4 He _____ 1990.
5 I _____ elementary school.
6 It _____ 1973.
7 We _____ about two years.
8 He _____ 2008. ◀ p.71

9C

a Circle the correct form.

She is / *She's been* single since last summer.
1 *He left* / *He has left* school two years ago.
2 *I lived* / *I've lived* in Vancouver for two years, but then I moved to Toronto.
3 *She lives* / *She's lived* in Florida since 2010.
4 *My sister had* / *My sister has had* her baby yesterday!
5 I work in an office. *I work* / *I've worked* there for 20 years.
6 *The city changed* / *The city has changed* a lot since I was a child.
7 They're divorced now. *They were* / *They have been* married for ten years.
8 *I met* / *I've met* Sandra when I *was* / *have been* in college.

b Complete with the present perfect or simple past.

1 **A** Where does Rob live now?
B In San Diego.
A How long _____ there? (he / live)
B For three months. He _____ there in September. (move)
2 **A** When _____? (Picasso / die)
B In 1977, in Paris I think.
A How long _____ in France? (he / live)
B For a long time. He _____ Spain when he was 25. (leave)
3 **A** My brother and his wife get along very well.
B How long _____ married? (they / be)
A They _____ married since 1995. They _____ in college. (be, meet)
B Really? _____ that in Chicago? (be)

◀ p.72

10

10A passive: *be* + past participle

Present: *am* / *is* / *are* + past participle 4 38

[+] Kevlar **is used** to make bullet-proof vests.
[-] White-out **isn't used** very much today.
[?] **Are** disposable diapers **used** all over the world?

Past: *was* / *were* + past participle

[+] The dishwasher **was invented** by Josephine Cochrane.
[-] Windshield wipers **weren't invented** until 1903.
[?] When **was** the washing machine **invented**?

- You can often say things in two ways, in the active or in the passive.
  *Josephine Cochrane **invented** the dishwasher.* (**active**)
  *The dishwasher **was invented** by Josephine Cochrane.* (**passive**)
- In the **active** sentence, the focus is more on **Josephine Cochrane**.
- In the **passive** sentence, the focus is more on **the dishwasher**.
- You can also use the passive when it isn't known or isn't important who does or did the action.
  *My car **was stolen** last week.*
  *Volvo cars **are made** in Sweden.*
- Use *by* to say who did the action.
  The Lord of the Rings *was written **by** Tolkien.*

10B used to / didn't use to

[+] When I was a child, I **used to** play on the street. 4 43
My brother **used to** have very long hair.
[-] Children **didn't use to** watch much TV when my father was young.
My daughter **didn't use to** like vegetables, but now she loves them.
[?] **Did** you **use to** wear a uniform at school? Yes, I did.
Did you **use to** like your teachers? No, I didn't.

- Use *used to* / *didn't use to* + base form to talk about things that happened repeatedly or were true for a long period of time in the past, but are usually not true now, e.g., things that happened when you were a child.
- *used to* / *didn't use to* is the same for all persons.
- Instead of *used to*, you can use the simple past with an adverb of frequency.
  *When I was a child, I **often played** on the street.*

used to or usually?
used to only exists in the past.
For habits in the present, use *usually* + simple present, **NOT** ~~use to~~
*I **usually cook** in the evenings.*
NOT ~~*I use to cook in the evenings.*~~

10C might / might not (possibility)

We **might** have a picnic tomorrow, but it depends on the weather. 4 50
She **might** come with us, but she's not sure yet.
I **might not** go to the party. I haven't decided yet.
You **might not** see him today. He's coming home late.

- Use *might* / *might not* + base form to say that maybe you will or won't do something.
  *We **might** have a picnic tomorrow.* = Maybe we will have a picnic tomorrow.
- *might* / *might not* is the same for all persons.
- *might not* is not usually contracted.

may / may not
You can also use *may* instead of *might* for possibility, *e.g.*,
*We **may** have a picnic tomorrow.*
*I **may not** go to the party.*

10A

a Complete with present or past passive.

The Eiffel Tower *was completed* in 1889. (complete)

1 Many of the things we use every day _____ by women. (invent)
2 In the US, most children _____ in public schools. (educate)
3 Australia _____ by Captain Cook in 1770. (discover)
4 This morning I _____ up by the neighbor's dog. (wake)
5 Baseball _____ in the summer in the US. (play)
6 The songs on this album _____ last year. (record)
7 Nowadays a lot of toys _____ in China. (make)
8 Carols are songs that _____ at Christmas. (sing)
9 These birds _____ in Canada. (not usually see)
10 "Rome _____ in a day." (not build)

b Rewrite the sentences in the passive, beginning with the highlighted words.

Shakespeare wrote Hamlet in 1603.
Hamlet was written by Shakespeare in 1603.

1 Jonathan Ive designed the iPod and the iPhone.
2 Most Mediterranean countries produce olive oil.
3 Herschel discovered Uranus in 1781.
4 Barry Sonnenfeld directed the *Men in Black* movies.
5 David Hockney painted *Mr and Mrs Clark and Percy* in 1970–1971.
6 Elvis Presley didn't write *Blue Suede Shoes*.
7 JK Rowling wrote the Harry Potter books.
8 They make Hyundai cars in South Korea.

◀ p.76

10B

a Look at how John has changed. Write five sentences about how he was **IN THE PAST**.

He used to be slim.

1 _____ long hair.
2 _____ glasses.
3 _____ a beard.
4 _____ soccer.
5 _____ a tie.

b Make sentences with *used to, didn't use to,* or *did … use to?*

[?] you / have long hair
Did you use to have long hair?

1 [+] my sister / hate math, but she loves it now
2 [?] where / you / work
3 [-] I / like vegetables when I was a child
4 [?] what / you / do on summer vacation when you were young
5 [-] Americans / put a lot of ice in drinks
6 [+] this building / be a movie theater
7 [?] your brother / teach here
8 [-] I / be a New York Yankees fan
9 [?] Jeff / have a motorcycle
10 [+] telegrams / be a way of sending important messages

◀ p.79

10C

a Match the sentences.

Take some sunscreen. [D]	A You might fall.
1 Let's buy a lottery ticket. [ ]	B It may not be your size.
2 Call the restaurant. [ ]	C We might get lost.
3 Don't stand on the fence. [ ]	D ~~It might be really sunny.~~
4 Let's take a map. [ ]	E We may not have enough money.
5 Try the shirt on. [ ]	F You might cut yourself.
6 Don't wait for me. [ ]	G It may be closed on Sundays.
7 Be careful with that knife! [ ]	H We might win.
8 Ask how much it costs. [ ]	I I may be late.

b Complete the sentences with *might* + a verb phrase.

be cold | be sick | be in a meeting | ~~go to the movies~~ | not have time | not like it | have pizza

I'm not sure what to do tonight. I *might go to the movies.*

1 Kim wasn't at school today. She _____
2 His phone is turned off. He _____
3 It's an unusual book. You _____
4 I don't know if I'll finish it. I _____
5 I'm not sure what to order. I _____
6 Take a jacket. It _____

◀ p.80

11

11A expressing movement

The man **went up** the steps and **into** the church. 4 58
He **drove out of** the garage and **along** the street.
I **ran over** the bridge and **across** the park.

- To express movement, use a verb of movement, e.g., *go, come, run, walk*, etc. and a preposition (or adverb) of movement e.g., *up, down, away*, etc.

> ***in* or *into*? *out* or *out of*?**
> Remember, use *into / out of* + noun, or *in / out* if there isn't a noun.
> *Come **into** the living room. Come **in**.*
> *He went **out of** the house. He went **out**.*
> See **Expressing movement** *p.162*.

11B word order of phrasal verbs

1 What time do you **get up**? 5 3
I don't usually **go out** during the week.
2 **Put on** your coat. **Put** your coat **on**. **Put** it **on**.
Turn off the TV. **Turn** the TV **off**. **Turn** it **off**.
3 I'm **looking for** my glasses.
Have you found your glasses? No, I'm still **looking for** them.

- A phrasal verb = verb + particle (preposition or adverb), e.g., *get up, turn on, look for*.
  1 Some phrasal verbs don't have an object, e.g., *get up, go out*.
  2 Some phrasal verbs have an object and are separable. With these phrasal verbs, you can put the particle (*on, off*, etc.) before or after the object.
- When the object is a pronoun (*me, it, him*, etc.) it always goes between the verb and particle.
  Here's your coat. ***Put it on.*** **NOT** ~~*Put on it.*~~
  3 Some phrasal verbs have an object and are inseparable, e.g., *look for*. With these phrasal verbs, the verb (e.g., *look*) and the particle (e.g., *for*) are never separated.
  *I'm **looking for** my glasses.* **NOT** ~~*I'm looking my glasses for.*~~

See **Phrasal verbs** *p.163*.

11C *so, neither* + auxiliaries

1 **A** I love classical music. 5 6
B **So do I.**
A I went to a classical concert last night.
B **So did I.**
2 **A** I'm not married.
B **Neither am I.**
A I don't want to get married.
B **Neither do I.**

- Use *So do I, Neither do I*, etc., to say that you have something in common with somebody.
  1 Use *So* + auxiliary + *I* to respond to affirmative sentences.
  2 Use *Neither* + auxiliary + *I* to respond to negative sentences.
- The auxiliary you use depends on the tense.

simple present	I don't like classical music.	Neither ***do*** I.
present continuous	I'm having a great time.	So ***am*** I.
can / can't	I can swim.	So ***can*** I.
simple past	I didn't like the movie. I was very tired.	Neither ***did*** I. So ***was*** I.
would / wouldn't	I wouldn't like to go there.	Neither ***would*** I.
present perfect	I've been to Brazil.	So ***have*** I.

- Be careful with the word order.
  So do I. | Neither do I. **NOT** ~~*So I do. | Neither I do.*~~

> ***neither* and *nor***
> You can also use *nor* instead of *neither*, e.g.,
> **A** *I didn't like the movie.*
> **B** ***Nor / Neither*** *did I.*
> *Neither* is usually pronounced /ˈniðər/, but can also be pronounced /ˈnaɪðər/.

11A

a Circle the correct preposition.

I lost my cell phone signal when we went *across* / *through* a tunnel.

1 We ran *to* / *down* the ocean, and jumped *into* / *out of* the water.
2 If you go *over* / *past* the bank, you'll see the supermarket on the right.
3 He walked *along* / *across* the street until he got to the park.
4 The plane flew *on* / *over* the town and then landed.
5 The dog ran *toward* / *to* me, but then it stopped.
6 We biked *over* / *out of* the bridge and *in* / *into* the city.
7 The racing cars went *around* / *under* the track 12 times.
8 The little boy suddenly ran *across* / *through* the road.

b Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

He jumped *into* his car and drove away.

1 As I biked under the bridge, a train went _____ it.
2 Come _____. The door's open.
3 This is the 3rd floor. Go _____ those stairs and you'll come to the 2nd floor.
4 He walked _____ the cafe and ordered a coffee.
5 I like going _____ on a Saturday night.
6 He took his passport _____ his bag.
7 I'm exhausted. I've just biked _____ a huge hill.

◀ p.85

11B

a Circle the correct form. If both are correct, check ✓ the box.

Turn off your phone / *Turn your phone off* before the movie starts. ☑

1 Tonight I have to *look my sister after* / *look after my sister.* ☐
2 Let's *go out this evening* / *go this evening out.* ☐
3 *Turn down the radio* / *Turn the radio down.* It's too loud. ☐
4 My brother is *looking for a new job* / *looking a new job for.* ☐
5 You should *throw away those old jeans* / *throw those old jeans away.* ☐
6 I don't like shopping for clothes online – I prefer to *try them on* / *try on them* before I buy them. ☐
7 *Take off your shoes* / *Take your shoes off* before you come in. ☐
8 That's my sister – I think you'd really *get along with her* / *get along her with.* ☐
9 If it doesn't fit, you should *take back it* / *take it back* to the store. ☐
10 What time do you *get up in the morning* / *get in the morning up*? ☐

b Complete the sentences with *it* or *them* and a word from the list.

back out on (x2) up (x3) down

I can't hear the radio. Turn *it up*.

1 Your clothes are all over the floor. Pick _____ _____.
2 Here's your coat. Put _____ _____.
3 "What does this word mean?" "Look _____ _____."
4 To get your passport, there are three forms. Please fill _____ _____ now.
5 You remember that money I lent you? When can you give _____ _____?
6 Is there anything on TV? Let's turn _____ _____ and see.
7 You won't remember my address. Write _____ _____.

◀ p.87

11C

a Complete **B**'s answers with an auxiliary verb.

A I like chocolate. **B** So *do* I.

1 **A** I'm really thirsty. **B** So _____ I.
2 **A** I didn't go out last night. **B** Neither _____ I.
3 **A** I was born in Seoul. **B** So _____ I.
4 **A** I don't eat meat. **B** Neither _____ I.
5 **A** I've been to Istanbul. **B** So _____ I.
6 **A** I can't sing. **B** Neither _____ I.
7 **A** I'd like to go to Bali. **B** So _____ I.
8 **A** I saw a movie last week. **B** So _____ I.
9 **A** I wouldn't like to eat that. **B** Neither _____ I.
10 **A** I can play chess. **B** So _____ I.

b Respond to **A**. Say you are the same. Use *So…I* or *Neither…I*.

A I don't like cabbage. *Neither do I.*

1 **A** I live near the supermarket. _____
2 **A** I'm not afraid of snakes. _____
3 **A** I went to bed late last night. _____
4 **A** I haven't been to Canada. _____
5 **A** I don't have any pets. _____
6 **A** I can speak three languages. _____
7 **A** I always drink coffee in the morning. _____
8 **A** I'm waiting for the bus to the airport. _____

◀ p.88

12

12A past perfect

[+] When I woke up the yard was all white. 5 17
It **had snowed** during the night.
I suddenly realized that **I'd left** my cell phone in the taxi.

[−] We got home just in time – the game **hadn't started**.
When she got to class, she realized that she **hadn't brought** her book.

[?] A I went to New York City last weekend. I really loved it.
B **Had** you **been** there before?
A No, I **hadn't**.

- Use the past perfect when you are already talking about the past and want to talk about an earlier past action.
  When I woke up the yard was all white. It ***had snowed*** *during the night.* = It snowed before I woke up.
- Make the past perfect with *had* / *hadn't* + past participle.
- The form of the past perfect is the same for all persons.
- *had* is sometimes contracted to *'d*.

had or would?
Be careful: *'d* can be *had* or *would*.
*I didn't know that you'**d** found a new job.* (*'d* = *had*)
*If you went by taxi, you'**d** get there more quickly.* (*'d* = *would*)

12B reported (or indirect) speech

direct speech	reported speech
"**I love you**."	He said (that) **he loved me**.
"**I've just arrived**."	She said (that) **she had just arrived**.
"**We'll come** at eight."	He told me (that) **they would come** at eight.
"**I don't want** to go to the party."	Jack told Anna (that) **he didn't want** to go to the party.

5 23

- Use reported speech to report (to tell somebody) what another person said.
- We often introduce reported speech with *said* or *told* (+ person)
- After *said* or *told* **that** is optional, e.g., *He said* (***that***) *he loved me*.
- Pronouns often change in reported speech, e.g., *I* changes to *he* or *she*.
  *"I'm tired." **She** told me (that) **she** was tired.*

- Verb tenses change like this:

direct speech	reported speech
"I **can** help you." (simple present)	He said (that) he **could** help me. (simple past)
"I'**m watching** TV." (present continuous)	She said (that) she **was watching** TV. (past continuous)
"I'**ll** call you." (will)	He told me (that) he **would** call me. (would)
"I **met** a girl." (simple past)	John told me (that) he **had met** a girl. (past perfect)
"I'**ve broken** my leg." (present perfect)	Sara said (that) she **had broken** her leg. (past perfect)

say or tell?
You can use *said* or *told* in reported speech, but they are used differently.
You can't use *said* with an object or pronoun.
*He **said** (that) he loved me.* **NOT** ~~*He said me (that) he loved me.*~~
You must use *told* with an object.
*He **told me** (that) he loved me.* **NOT** ~~*He told (that) he loved me.*~~

12C questions without auxiliaries

subject	verb	
Who	painted	*Mr and Mrs Clark and Percy?*
Which singer	made	reggae popular all over the world?
How many people	live	near the school?
Who	wants	a cup of coffee?

5 27

- When the question word (*Who?, What?, Which?, How many?*, etc.) is the subject of the verb in the question, we don't use an auxiliary verb (*do* / *does* / *did*).
  Who painted *Mr and Mrs Clark and Percy?*
  NOT ~~*Who did paint...?*~~
- In most other questions in the simple present and past, we use the auxiliary verb *do* / *does* / *did* + the base form.
  *What music **do** you like?* **NOT** ~~*What music you like?*~~
  See **1A** *p.126*.

12A

a Match the sentence halves.

I couldn't get into my house because [C]
1 When our friends arrived [ ]
2 I took the jacket back because [ ]
3 Jill didn't come with us because [ ]
4 I turned on the TV news [ ]
5 Fumiko was nervous because [ ]
6 When I got to the supermarket checkout [ ]

A she'd made other plans.
B I realized that I'd left my wallet at home.
C ~~I'd lost my keys.~~
D I had bought the wrong size.
E it was the first time she had flown.
F to see what had happened.
G we hadn't finished cooking the dinner.

b Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in the simple past and past perfect.

We *didn't get* a table in the restaurant because we *hadn't made* a reservation. (not get, not make)
1 I _____ Sonia because she _____ a lot. (not recognize, change)
2 My friend _____ to tell me that I _____ my wallet in his car. (call, leave)
3 When I _____ the radio, the news _____. (turn on, already finish)
4 She _____ me the DVD because she _____ it yet. (not lend, not watch)
5 The store _____ by the time we _____. (close, arrive)
6 When we _____ home, we saw that somebody _____ the kitchen window. (get, break)
7 Luckily, it _____ snowing when we _____ work. (stop, leave)

◀ p.93

12B

a Write the sentences in reported speech.

"I love you." He told her that he *loved her*.
1 "I'm hungry." She said that she _____.
2 "I don't like sad movies." He told her he _____.
3 "I'll call the doctor." He said he _____.
4 "I've bought a new phone." Paul told us that he _____.
5 "I live downtown." She said that she _____.
6 "We can't do it!" They said that they _____.
7 "I saw *Eclipse* at the movie theater." Julie said that she _____.

b Write the sentences in direct speech.

He told her that he was a doctor. He said: "*I'm a doctor.*"
1 She said that she was studying Japanese. She said: "_____."
2 Tony told me that his car had broken down. Tony said: "_____."
3 Yoshi said that he would send me an email. Yoshi said: "_____."
4 Bella and Eberto said they were in a hurry. Bella and Eberto said: "_____."
5 He said he hadn't finished his essay yet. He said: "_____."
6 She told us that she wouldn't arrive on time. She said: "_____."
7 David said he had just arrived. David said: "_____."

◀ p.94

12C

a Circle the correct question form.

What *you did* / *did you do* last night?
1 What *happened* / *did happen* to you?
2 What *means this word* / *does this word mean*?
3 How many people *came* / *did come* to the meeting?
4 Which bus *goes* / *does go* to town?
5 Which movie *won* / *did win* the Academy Award this year?
6 What *said the teacher* / *did the teacher say*?
7 Who *made* / *did make* this cake? It's delicious!

b Write the questions. Do you know the answers?

How many Formula 1 championships *did Michael Schumacher win*? (Michael Schumacher / win)
1 When _____ president of the US? (Barack Obama / become)
2 Which US state _____ with the letter "H"? (start)
3 Which books _____? (J.R.R. Tolkien / write)
4 Who _____ the soccer World Cup in 2010? (win)
5 Which sport _____ the lightest ball? (use)
6 Where _____? (the 2012 Olympics / take place)
7 Which company _____? (Steve Jobs / start)

◀ p.96

Describing people

1 APPEARANCE

a Match the sentences and pictures.

What does he / she look like?

- She has curly red hair.
- She has long straight hair.
- *1* She has big blue eyes.
- She has dark wavy hair.
- He has a beard and a mustache.
- He's bald.
- He's very tall and thin.
- He's short and a little overweight.
- He's medium height and slim.

b 1 10 Listen and check.

> ***thin* or *slim*? *fat* or *overweight*?**
> *Thin* and *slim* are both the opposite of *fat*, but *slim* = thin in an attractive way.
> *Fat* is not very polite. It is more polite to say someone is (*a little*) *overweight*.
>
> **Using two adjectives together**
> We often use two adjectives together (without *and*) to describe hair or eyes, e.g., *She has long curly hair* or *He has big brown eyes*. Adjectives go in this order: **size>style>color** noun.

2 PERSONALITY

a Match the adjectives with the definitions.

What's he like? What's she like?

friendly /ˈfrɛndli/ funny /ˈfʌni/ generous /ˈdʒɛnərəs/ kind /kaɪnd/ lazy /ˈleɪzi/ shy /ʃaɪ/ smart /smɑrt/ talkative /ˈtɔkətɪv/

		Adjective	Opposite
1	A person who is open and warm is	*friendly*	
2	A person who talks a lot is		
3	A person who likes giving people things is		
4	A person who is friendly and good to other people is		
5	A person who doesn't want to work is		
6	A person who makes people laugh is		
7	A person who is quick at learning and understanding things is (synonym *intelligent*)		
8	A person who can't talk easily to people he / she doesn't know is		

b Complete the **Opposite** column with an adjective from the list.

cheap /tʃip/ extrovert /ˈɛkstrəvərt/ hardworking /ˌhɑrdwərkɪŋ/ quiet /ˈkwaɪət/ serious /ˈsɪriəs/ stupid /ˈstupəd/ unfriendly /ʌnˈfrɛndli/ unkind /ʌnˈkaɪnd/

c 1 11 Listen and check.

d In pairs, ask and answer about a member of your family or a good friend.

A *What does your sister look like?*

B *She's tall and she has short dark hair.*

A *What's she like?*

> ***nice; funny* or *fun*?**
> *Nice* is a very common [+] adjective of personality, e.g., *He's a very nice person. Nice* describes a person who is friendly and kind.
> A person who is *funny* makes you laugh. A person who is *fun* is a person who you have a good time with.

◀ p.6

Things you wear

a Match the words and pictures.

Clothes

- cardigan /ˈkɑrdɪgən/
- coat /koʊt/
- dress /drɛs/
- jacket /ˈdʒækət/
- jeans /dʒinz/
- pants /pænts/
- shirt /ʃərt/
- 1 shorts /ʃɔrts/
- skirt /skərt/
- suit /sut/
- sweater /ˈswɛtər/
- top /tɑp/
- T-shirt /ˈtʃərt/
- warm-up suit /ˈwɔrm ʌp sut/

Footwear

- boots /buts/
- flip-flops /ˈflɪp flɑps/
- sandals /ˈsændlz/
- shoes /ʃuz/
- sneakers /ˈsnikərz/

Accessories

- belt /bɛlt/
- cap /kæp/
- gloves /glʌvz/
- hat /hæt/
- leggings /ˈlɛgɪŋz/
- scarf /skɑrf/
- socks /sɑks/
- tie /taɪ/
- tights /taɪts/

Jewelry

- bracelet /ˈbreɪslət/
- earrings /ˈɪrɪŋz/
- necklace /ˈnɛkləs/
- ring /rɪŋ/

b (1) 19 Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.8

wear, carry, or dress?

Use *wear* for clothes and jewelry / glasses, etc.
She's wearing a hat. He's wearing sunglasses.

Use *carry* for bags, briefcases, etc.
She's carrying a bag.

Use *dress* (with no object) to describe the kind of clothes people wear.
TV journalists dress very well. Jane always dresses in black.

Vacations

1 PHRASES WITH *GO*

a Match the phrases and pictures.

- go abroad
- 1 go away for the weekend
- go by bus / car / plane / train
- go camping
- go for a walk
- go on vacation
- go out at night
- go sightseeing
- go skiing / walking / biking
- go swimming / sailing / surfing

b 1 31 Listen and check.

c Cover the phrases and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

2 OTHER VACATION ACTIVITIES

a Complete the verb phrases.

book buy have rent spend
~~stay~~ sunbathe take

stay in a hotel / at a campsite / with friends
_____ photos
_____ souvenirs
_____ on the beach
_____ a good time
_____ money / time
_____ an apartment / a bicycle / skis
_____ flights / hotels online

b 1 32 Listen and check.

c Test yourself. Cover the verbs. Remember the phrases.

3 ADJECTIVES

a Match the questions and answers.

1 What was the weather like? It was…
2 What was the hotel like? It was…
3 What was the town like? It was…
4 What were the people like? They were…
5 What was the food like? It was…

- [+] comfortable, luxurious
  [–] basic, dirty, uncomfortable
- [+] friendly, helpful [–] unfriendly, unhelpful
- [+] beautiful, nice [–] noisy, crowded
- [+] delicious [–] nothing special, disgusting
- [+] warm, sunny [–] very windy, foggy, cloudy

b 1 33 Listen and check.

General affirmative and negative adjectives
[+] *nice, wonderful, fantastic, great*
OK, not bad, alright
[–] *awful, horrible, terrible*

◀ p.12

Prepositions

1 AT / IN / ON

a Complete the chart with *at*, *in*, or *on*.

	Place	Time
1 ___	**Countries and cities** *Peru, Lima* **Rooms** *the kitchen* **Buildings** *a store, a museum* **Closed spaces** *a park, a yard* *a car*	**Months** *February, June* **Seasons** *(the) winter* **Years** *2011* **Times of day** *the morning, the afternoon, the evening* (not ~~*night*~~)
2 ___	**Transportation** *a bike, a bus, a train, a plane, a ship* (not ~~*car*~~) **A surface** *the floor, a table, a shelf, the balcony, the roof, the wall*	**Dates** *March 1st* **Days** *Tuesday, New Year's Day, Valentine's Day* *the weekend*
3 ___	*school, home, work, college* *the airport, the train station, a bus stop* *a party, the door*	**Times** *6 o'clock, two thirty, 7:45* *night, midnight, lunch*

b (1) 42 Listen and check.

c Look at the chart for a few minutes. Then test a partner:

A Say a place or time word, e.g., *Lima, Tuesday.*

B Close your books. Say the preposition (*at*, *in*, or *on*).

Change roles.

◀ p.14

2 VERBS + PREPOSITIONS

a Complete the **Prepositions** column with a word from the list.

about at for in of on to with

		Prepositions
1	I arrived ___ New York City on Friday night.	*in*
2	I was very tired when I arrived ___ the hotel.	___
3	I hate waiting ___ people who are late.	___
4	**A** What are you going to do ___ the weekend?	___
	B I don't know. It depends ___ the weather.	___
5	I'm sorry, but I really don't agree ___ you.	___
6	I asked ___ a chicken sandwich, but this is tuna!	___
7	Let's invite Debbie and Tim ___ the party.	___
8	Who's going to pay ___ the meal?	___
9	I need to speak ___ Martin ___ the meeting.	___, ___
10	I don't spend much money ___ food.	___
11	Are you going to write ___ him soon?	___
12	Don't worry ___ the exam. It isn't very hard.	___
13	She fell ___ love ___ a man she met on the Internet.	___, ___
14	You're not listening! What are you thinking ___?	___
15	**A** What do you think ___ Shakira?	___
	B I really like her. I think she's great.	

b (1) 68 Listen and check.

c Cover the **Prepositions** column. Say the sentences.

> **arrive in or arrive at?**
> Remember we use *arrive in* + cities or countries and *arrive at* + buildings, stations, etc.

◀ p.23

Housework, *make* or *do*?

1 HOUSEWORK

a Match the verb phrases and the pictures.

- clean the floor
- clean your room
- do the dishes
- do the ironing
- do the laundry
- do the shopping
- make lunch
- make the beds
- pick up dirty clothes (from the floor)
- put away your clothes
- *1* set the table (opposite *clear*)
- take out the garbage

b 2 13 Listen and check.

c Cover the phrases and look at the pictures. Say the phrases.

2 *MAKE* OR *DO*?

a Write *make* or *do* next to the pictures.

do a crossword

_____ a mistake

_____ an exercise / homework

_____ a noise

_____ a phone call

_____ housework

_____ friends

_____ lunch / dinner

_____ yoga

_____ plans

b 2 14 Listen and check.

c Cover the phrases and look at the pictures. Say the phrases.

d Talk to a partner.

- What housework do *you* usually do? What have you done today?
- Who does the most housework in your family?
- Do you argue about housework in your family? Give examples.
- What housework do you hate doing? What don't you mind doing? Is there any housework you like doing?

◀ p.28

Shopping

1 IN A SHOP OR STORE

a Match the words and pictures.

- checkout
- customer
- fitting rooms
- receipt
- salesperson
- shopping cart / basket
- *1* take something back
- try something on

b 2 28 Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

> ***fit* or *suit*?**
> If clothes ***don't fit*** you, it means they are the wrong size (e.g., too big, too small, too tight, too loose).
> If clothes ***don't suit*** you, it means they don't look good on you.

2 ONLINE

a Read the text about shopping online. Then complete it with words from the list.

account /ə'kaʊnt/ auction /'ɔkʃn/ cart /kɑrt/
checkout /'tʃɛkaʊt/ delivery /dɪ'lɪvəri/ item /'aɪtəm/
payment /'peɪmənt/ size /saɪz/ website /'wɛbsaɪt/

Search Help

Shopping online

When you are shopping online, first you go to the [1]*website*. The first time you use a site, you usually have to **create** an [2]_____ where you give your personal information. You then choose what you want to buy and **click on** each [3]_____. If you are buying clothes, make sure you get the right [4]_____! Everything you buy goes into your **shopping bag** or [5]_____, usually at the top right of the page. When you are ready to pay you click on "**proceed** to [6]_____." You then have to give your [7]_____ **address** where you want them to send your things and give your [8]_____ **information**, for example your credit card number and expiration date. Many people today also buy and sell things online at [9]_____ **sites** like eBay.

b 2 29 Listen and check.

◀ *p.31*

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

Describing a town or city

1 WHERE IS IT? HOW BIG IS IT?

a Look at the map. Then read the description of Reading and circle the correct words or phrases.

> Reading is a city in the *east / west* of the state of Pennsylvania in the US, *on the Schuykill River / in the mountains*. It is about 60 miles *east / west* of Philadelphia. It is a *small / medium / large* city, and it has a population of about 88,000. It is famous for its discount outlet shopping malls, which were the first in the US.

b 2 46 Listen and check.

2 WHAT'S IT LIKE? adjectives to describe a town or city

a Match the adjectives and sentences 1–6.

	Opposite
boring /ˈbɔrɪŋ/	*exciting*
crowded /ˈkraʊdəd/	
dangerous /ˈdeɪndʒərəs/	
modern /ˈmɑdərn/	
noisy /ˈnɔɪzi/	
polluted /pəˈlutɪd/	

1 There are a lot of restaurants and clubs with loud music.
2 The air is very dirty.
3 There are too many people.
4 The buildings were all built very recently.
5 There's nothing to do.
6 You have to be careful, especially at night.

b Match these adjectives with their opposites in **a**.

> clean /klin/ empty /ˈempti/
> exciting /ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/ interesting /ˈɪntrəstɪŋ/
> old /oʊld/ quiet /ˈkwaɪət/ safe /seɪf/

c 2 47 Listen and check your answers to **a** and **b**.

d Cover the words and look at the sentences. Remember the adjectives and their opposites.

3 WHAT IS THERE TO SEE?

a Put the words in the right column.

> castle /ˈkæsl/ cathedral /kəˈθidrəl/ church /tʃərtʃ/
> department store /dɪˈpɑrtmənt stɔr/ market /ˈmɑrkət/ mosque /mɑsk/
> museum /myuˈziəm/ palace /ˈpæləs/ shopping mall /ˈʃɑpɪŋ mɔl/
> statue /ˈstætʃu/ temple /ˈtempl/ town hall /ˈtaʊn hɔl/

Religious buildings	Places where you can buy things	Historic buildings and monuments
		castle

b 2 48 Listen and check.

c Which of the places in **a** are there / aren't there in your city?

> *There's a cathedral and some churches.*
> *There isn't a castle.*

◀ p.39

Opposite verbs

a Match the verbs and pictures.

	Opposite
arrive (*early*) /ə'raɪv/	*leave*
break (*your glasses*) /breɪk/	
buy (*a house*) /baɪ/	
find (*your keys*) /faɪnd/	
forget (*a name*) /fər'get/	
lend (*money to somebody*) /lend/	
miss (*a train*) /mɪs/	
pass (*an exam*) /pæs/	
1 push (*the door*) /pʊʃ/	
send (*an email*) /send/	
start (*a race*) /stɑrt/	
teach (*English*) /titʃ/	
turn on (*the TV*) /tərn 'ɑn/	
win (*a game*) /wɪn/	

b Find the opposite verbs in the list. Write them in the **Opposite** column.

borrow (*from somebody*) /'bɑroʊ/
catch /kætʃ/
fail /feɪl/
fix / repair /fɪks/ /rɪ'per/
get / receive /get/ /rɪ'siv/
learn /lərn/
~~leave~~ /liv/
lose (x2) /luz/
pull /pʊl/
remember /rɪ'membər/
sell /sel/
stop / finish /stɑp/ /'fɪnɪʃ/
turn off /tərn 'ɑf/

c 3 2 Listen and check.

d Cover the verbs and look at the pictures. Remember the verbs and their opposites.

◀ p.44

Verb forms

1 VERBS + INFINITIVE

a Complete the ***to* + verb** column with *to* + a verb from the list.

be bring buy catch drive find get married
go (x2) help pay rain see turn off

			***to* + verb**
1	**decide**	We've decided ___ to France for our vacation.	*to go*
2	**forget**	Don't forget ___ all the lights.	___
3	**hope**	We hope ___ you again soon.	___
4	**learn**	I'm learning ___. My driving test's next month.	___
5	**need**	I need ___ to the supermarket. We don't have any milk.	___
6	**offer**	He offered ___ me with my resume.	___
7	**plan**	They're planning ___ soon.	___
8	**pretend**	He pretended ___ sick, but he wasn't really.	___
9	**promise**	He's promised ___ me back when he gets a job.	___
10	**remember**	Remember ___ your dictionaries to class tomorrow.	___
11	**start**	It was very cloudy and it started ___.	___
12	**try**	I'm trying ___ a job, but it's very hard.	___
13	**want**	I want ___ the six o'clock train.	___
14	**would like**	I'd like ___ a new car next month.	___

b 3 25 Listen and check.

c Cover the ***to* + verb** column. Say the sentences.

◀ p.53

2 VERBS + GERUND (VERB + *-ING*)

a Complete the **gerund** column with a verb from the list in the gerund.

be cook do have make rain read talk clean up wake up work

			gerund
1	**enjoy**	I enjoy ___ in bed.	*reading*
2	**finish**	Have you finished ___ your room?	___
3	**go on** (= continue)	I want to go on ___ until I'm 60.	___
4	**hate**	I hate ___ late when I'm meeting someone.	___
5	**like**	I like ___ breakfast in a cafe.	___
6	**love**	I love ___ on a sunny morning.	___
7	**(don't) mind**	I don't mind ___ the ironing. It's very relaxing.	___
8	**spend (time)**	She spends hours ___ on the phone.	___
9	**start***	It started ___ at 5:30 in the morning.	___
10	**stop**	Please stop ___ that noise. I can't think.	___
11	**feel like**	I don't feel like ___ today. Let's go out for lunch.	___

* *start* can be used with a gerund or infinitive, e.g., *It started raining. It started to rain.*

b 3 29 Listen and check.

c Cover the **gerund** column. Say the sentences.

◀ p.55

get

> **get**
> *get* is one of the most common verbs in English. It has several different meanings, e.g., *arrive*, *become*, and can also be used with many prepositions or adverbs with different meanings, e.g., *get up*, *get on with*.

a Match the phrases and the pictures.

***get* = become (+ adjective / past participle)**

- get angry
- get divorced
- get in shape
- get lost
- get married
- *1* get nervous

***get* = become (+ comparative)**

- get better
- get colder
- get worse

***get* = buy / obtain**

- get a job
- get a newspaper
- get a ticket

***get* + preposition (phrasal verbs)**

- get along (well) with
- get on / off a bus
- get up

***get* (to) = arrive**

- get home
- get to school
- get to work

***get* = receive**

- get an email
- get a present
- get a (text) message

b 3 54 Listen and check.

c Cover the phrases and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.61

Confusing verbs

a Match the verbs and pictures.

wear /wɛr/ *jewelry* *clothes*	**carry** /ˈkæri/ *a bag* *a baby*
win /wɪn/ *a medal* *a prize* *a game*	**earn** /ərn/ *a salary* *money*
know /noʊ/ *somebody well* *something*	**meet** /mit/ *somebody for the first time* *at 11 o'clock*
1 **hope** /hoʊp/ *that something good will happen* *to do something*	**wait** /weɪt/ *for a bus* *for a long time*
watch /wɑtʃ/ *TV* *a game*	**look at** /lʊk æt/ *a photo* *your watch*
look /lʊk/ *happy* *about 25 years old*	**look like** /lʊk laɪk/ *your mother* *a model*
miss /mɪs/ *the bus* *a class*	**lose** /luz/ *a game* *your glasses*
bring /brɪŋ/ *your dictionary* *something back from vacation*	**take** /teɪk/ *an umbrella* *your children to school*
look for /lʊk fɔr/ *your glasses* *a job*	**find** /faɪnd/ *your glasses* *a job*
say /seɪ/ *sorry* *hello* *something **to** somebody*	**tell** /tɛl/ *a joke* *a lie* *somebody something*
lend /lɛnd/ *money **to** somebody*	**borrow** /ˈbɑroʊ/ *money **from** somebody*

b 4 5 Listen and check.

c Work with a partner. **A** say a verb, **B** say a possible continuation.

A *Wait...* **B** *for a bus*

◀ *p.63*

hope* and *expect

hope = to want something to happen and think it will happen, always for positive things, e.g., *I hope I'll pass the exam.*

expect = to think something will happen, usually for a reason (not necessarily a positive thing), e.g., *I expect I'll fail because I haven't worked very hard.*

look* and *look like

After *look* we use an adjective or an age.

After *look like* we use a noun.

Animals

a Match the words and pictures.

- bee /bi/
- butterfly /ˈbʌtərflaɪ/
- fly /flaɪ/
- mosquito /məˈskitoʊ/
- spider /ˈspaɪdər/

- *1* bull /bʊl/
- chicken /ˈtʃɪkən/
- cow /kaʊ/
- goat /goʊt/
- horse /hɔrs/
- pig /pɪg/
- sheep /ʃip/

- bat /bæt/
- bear /bɛr/
- bird /bərd/
- camel /ˈkæml/
- crocodile /ˈkrɑkədaɪl/
- dolphin /ˈdɑlfən/
- elephant /ˈɛləfənt/
- giraffe /dʒəˈræf/
- jellyfish /ˈdʒɛlifɪʃ/
- kangaroo /kæŋgəˈru/
- lion /ˈlaɪən/
- monkey /ˈmʌŋki/
- mouse (plural *mice*) /maʊs/
- rabbit /ˈræbət/
- shark /ʃɑrk/
- snake /sneɪk/
- tiger /ˈtaɪgər/
- whale /weɪl/

b 4 17 Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.68

Expressing movement

a Match the words and pictures.

- under (*the bridge*) /ˈʌndər/
- along (*the street*) /əˈlɔŋ/
- around (*the lake*) /əˈraʊnd/
- through (*the tunnel*) /θru/
- into (*the store*) /ˈɪntu/
- across (*the road*) /əˈkrɔs/
- over (*the bridge*) /ˈoʊvər/
- up (*the steps*) /ʌp/
- past (*the church*) /pæst/
- toward (*the lake*) /ˈtoʊərd/
- *1* down (*the steps*) /daʊn/
- out of (*the store*) /ˈaʊt əv/

in(to)* and *out (of)

After a verb of movement we use either *in / out* or *into / out of* + place, e.g.,

*Come **in**. Come **into** my office.*
*He ran **out**. He ran **out of** the room.*

b 4 57 Listen and check.

c Cover the words. Where did Snowy go?

He went down the steps...

away, off,* and *back

We use ***away*** to express movement to another place, e.g., ***Go away**! I don't want to speak to you. The man **ran away** when he saw the police officer.*

We use ***back*** to express movement to the place where something or somebody was before, e.g., *After dinner we **went back** to our hotel. Their dog ran away and never **came back**.*

We use ***off*** to express movement down or away, e.g., ***Get off** the bus at the train station. The man **ran off** when he saw the police officer.*

◀ p.84

Phrasal verbs

a Match the sentences and the pictures.

- The game will **be over** at about 5:30.
- I need to **give up** fast food.
- *1* Don't **throw away** that letter!
- **Turn down** the music! It's very loud.
- **Turn up** the TV! I can't hear.
- He **looked up** the words in a dictionary.
- Could you **fill out** this form?
- I want to **find out** about hotels in Mexico City.
- It's bedtime – go and **put on** your pajamas.
- Could you **take off** your boots, please?
- My sister's **looking after** Jimmy for me today.
- I'm really **looking forward to** the holidays.

b 5 2 Listen and check.

c Cover the sentences and look at the pictures. Remember the phrasal verbs.

d Look at these other phrasal verbs from Files 1–10. Can you remember what they mean?

get up
come on
go away (for the weekend)
go out (at night)
stand up
sit down

turn on (the TV)
turn off (the TV)
try on (clothes)
give back (something you've borrowed)
take back (something to a store)
call back (later)
pay back (money you've borrowed)
write down (the words)
put away (e.g., clothes in a closet)
pick up (something on the floor)

look for (something you've lost)
get on / off (a bus)
get along with (a person)

◀ *p.87*

Type 1 = no object
The verb and the particle (*on, up*, etc.) are **never separated**.
I get up at 7:30.

Type 2 = + object
The verb and the particle (*on, up*, etc.) **can be separated**.
Turn the TV on. OR *Turn on the TV.*

Type 3 = + object
The verb and the particle (*on, up*, etc.) are **never separated**.
Look for your keys. NOT ~~*Look your keys for.*~~

Irregular verbs

5 29

Present	Simple past	Past participle
be /bi/	was /wəz/ were /wər/	been /bɪn/
become /bɪ'kʌm/	became /bɪ'keɪm/	become
begin /bɪ'gɪn/	began /bɪ'gæn/	begun /bɪ'gʌn/
break /breɪk/	broke /broʊk/	broken /'broʊkən/
bring /brɪŋ/	brought /brɔt/	brought
build /bɪld/	built /bɪlt/	built
buy /baɪ/	bought /bɔt/	bought
can /kæn/	could /kʊd/	–
catch /kætʃ/	caught /kɔt/	caught
choose /tʃuz/	chose /tʃoʊz/	chosen /'tʃoʊzn/
come /kʌm/	came /keɪm/	come
cost /kɔst/	cost	cost
cut /kʌt/	cut	cut
do /du/	did /dɪd/	done /dʌn/
drink /drɪŋk/	drank /dræŋk/	drunk /drʌŋk/
drive /draɪv/	drove /droʊv/	driven /'drɪvn/
eat /it/	ate /eɪt/	eaten /'itn/
fall /fɔl/	fell /fɛl/	fallen /'fɔlən/
feel /fil/	felt /fɛlt/	felt
find /faɪnd/	found /faʊnd/	found
fly /flaɪ/	flew /flu/	flown /floʊn/
forget /fər'gɛt/	forgot /fər'gɑt/	forgotten /fər'gɑtn/
get /gɛt/	got /gɑt/	gotten /'gɑtn/
give /gɪv/	gave /geɪv/	given /'gɪvn/
go /goʊ/	went /wɛnt/	gone /gɑn/
grow /groʊ/	grew /gru/	grown /groʊn/
have /hæv/	had /hæd/	had
hear /hɪr/	heard /hərd/	heard
hit /hɪt/	hit	hit
keep /kip/	kept /kɛpt/	kept
know /noʊ/	knew /nu/	known /noʊn/

Present	Simple past	Past participle
learn /lərn/	learned /lərnd/	learned
leave /liv/	left /lɛft/	left
lend /lɛnd/	lent /lɛnt/	lent
let /lɛt/	let	let
lose /luz/	lost /lɔst/	lost
make /meɪk/	made /meɪd/	made
meet /mit/	met /mɛt/	met
pay /peɪ/	paid /peɪd/	paid
put /pʊt/	put	put
read /rid/	read /rɛd/	read /rɛd/
ring /rɪŋ/	rang /ræŋ/	rung /rʌŋ/
run /rʌn/	ran /ræn/	run
say /seɪ/	said /sɛd/	said
see /si/	saw /sɔ/	seen /sin/
sell /sɛl/	sold /soʊld/	sold
send /sɛnd/	sent /sɛnt/	sent
shut /ʃʌt/	shut	shut
sing /sɪŋ/	sang /sæŋ/	sung /sʌŋ/
sit /sɪt/	sat /sæt/	sat
sleep /slip/	slept /slɛpt/	slept
speak /spik/	spoke /spoʊk/	spoken /'spoʊkən/
spend /spɛnd/	spent /spɛnt/	spent
stand /stænd/	stood /stʊd/	stood
steal /stil/	stole /stoʊl/	stolen /'stoʊlən/
swim /swɪm/	swam /swæm/	swum /swʌm/
take /teɪk/	took /tʊk/	taken /'teɪkən/
teach /titʃ/	taught /tɔt/	taught
tell /tɛl/	told /toʊld/	told
think /θɪŋk/	thought /θɔt/	thought
throw /θroʊ/	threw /θru/	thrown /θroʊn/
understand /ʌndər'stænd/	understood /ʌndər'stʊd/	understood
wake /weɪk/	woke /woʊk/	woken /'woʊkən/
wear /wɛr/	wore /wɔr/	worn /wɔrn/
win /wɪn/	won /wʌn/	won
write /raɪt/	wrote /roʊt/	written /'rɪtn/

Appendix

have got

I've got a brother and two sisters. 3 44
I haven't got any pets.
She's got a beautiful house.
He hasn't got many friends.
Have they got any children? No, they haven't.
Has the hotel got a swimming pool? Yes, it has.

full form	contraction	negative	
I have got	I've got	I haven't got	a car.
You have got	You've got	You haven't got	
He / She / It has got	He / She / It's got	He / She / It hasn't got	
We have got	We've got	We haven't got	
You have got	You've got	You haven't got	
They have got	They've got	They haven't got	

?		✓		✗	
Have I got	a car?	Yes,	I have.	No,	I haven't.
Have you got			you have.		you haven't.
Has he / he / it got			he / she / it has.		he / she / it hasn't.
Have we got			we have.		we haven't.
Have you got			you have.		you haven't.
Have they got			they have.		they haven't.

- You can use *have got* instead of *have* for possession in the present.
  *I've **got** a bike.* = **I have** a bike.
  ***Have you got** a car?* = **Do you have** a car?
- We also use *have got* to talk about family and sicknesses, and to describe people.
  *I've **got** two sisters. He's **got** a cold.*
  *She's **got** long, brown hair.*
- *have got* is not used in the past. For past possession use *had*.
  *I **had** a pet cat when I was a child.*
  ***Did you have** a pet?*
- *I have … / Do you have …?* is more common than *I've got / Have you got…?* in conversation in the US.

a Write ⊞, ⊟, and ? sentences with the correct form of *have got*.

they / big house ⊞ *They've got a big house.*

1 she / any brothers ⊟
2 you / big apartment ?
3 we / a lot of work today ⊟
4 your sister / a smartphone ?
5 Roger and Val / a beautiful yard ⊞
6 I / a really good teacher ⊞
7 My brother / a job right now ⊟
8 they / the same color eyes ⊞
9 we / a meeting today ?
10 he / many friends at work ⊟

b Complete the sentences with the right form of *have got*.

They love animals. They've got two dogs and five cats.

1 I hope it doesn't rain – I _____ my umbrella today.
2 _____ your phone _____ a good camera?
3 I _____ a new iPad. Do you want to see it?
4 Sorry kids, I _____ enough money to buy candy.
5 Jane _____ 50 pairs of shoes – can you believe it?
6 I can't call him now – I _____ any service for my phone.
7 _____ you _____ your keys? I can't find mine.
8 Maria's so lucky – she _____ beautiful, curly hair.
9 One more question, Mr. Jones. _____ you _____ any experience?
10 We might have problems getting there because we _____ a GPS in our car.

◀ p.59

Vowel sounds

	usual spelling	! but also
tree	**ee** feel teeth **ea** teach mean **e** she we	people machine key niece taxi receive
fish	**i** thin lips history kiss if since	English women busy decide gym build
ear	**eer** cheers engineer **ere** here we're **ear** near fear	serious
cat	**a** hand hat back catch carry match	
egg	**e** spell lend smell send very red	friendly head sweater any said says
chair	**air** airport stairs fair hair **are** square careful	their there wear bear where
clock	**o** top rock socks college hot box **a** father	yacht quality
saw	**al** walk talk **aw** awful draw **augh** caught daughter	bought thought abroad August
horse	**or** boring worn **ore** more score **oor** door floor	four
boot	**oo** school choose **u*** rude use **ew** new knew	do suit juice shoe lose through
bull	**u** pull push **oo** foot book look took	would should woman

	usual spelling	! but also
tourist	A very unusual sound. Europe furious sure	plural
up	**u** sunny must funny run lucky cut	come does someone enough young touch
computer	Many different spellings, usually unstressed. nervous arrive polite agree suggest terrible problem	
bird	**er** person verb **ir** dirty shirt **ur** nurse turn **er/or** painter writer (unstressed) inventor	earn work world worse picture
owl	**ou** shout around mouth blouse **ow** crowded down	
phone	**o*** open hope won't so **oa** coat goal	snow throw although shoulder
car	**ar** far arms scarf dark	heart
train	**a*** face wake **ai** brain fail **ay** away pay gray	break steak great eight they
boy	**oi** coin noisy boiling **oy** toy enjoy	
bike	**i*** smile bite **y** shy why **igh** might sights	buy eyes height

vowels vowels followed by /r/ diphthongs

* especially before consonant + *e*

Consonant sounds

	usual spelling		! but also
p parrot	**p**	promise possible copy flip-flops	
	pp	opposite appearance	
b bag	**b**	belt body probably job cab	
	bb	rabbit robbed	
k key	**c**	camping across	school stomach chemistry account
	k	skirt kind	
	ck	checkout pick	
g girl	**g**	grow goat forget begin	guest spaghetti
	gg	foggy leggings	
f flower	**f**	find afraid safe	enough laugh
	ph	elephant nephew	
	ff	off different	
v vase	**v**	video visit love invent over river	of
t tie	**t**	try tell start late	walked dressed
	tt	better sitting	
d dog	**d**	did dead hard told	loved tired
	dd	address middle	
s snake	**s**	stops faster	science answer psychology
	ss	miss message	
	ci/ce	place circle	
	c	cent city cycle (before **e, i, y**)	
z zebra	**z**	zoo lazy freezing	
	s	reason lose has toes	
ʃ shower	**sh**	shut shoes wash finish	sugar sure machine moustache
	ti (+ **vowel**)	patient information	
	ci+a	special musician	
ʒ television	An unusual sound. Asia decision confusion usually garage		

	usual spelling		! but also
θ thumb	**th**	thing throw healthy south math both	
ð mother	**th**	neither the clothes sunbathe that with	
tʃ chess	**ch**	chicken child beach	question
	tch	catch match	
	t (+**ure**)	picture future	
dʒ jazz	**j**	jacket just June enjoy	generous teenager giraffe age
	dge	bridge judge	
l leg	**l**	little less plan incredible	
	ll	will silly	
r right	**r**	really rest practice try	written wrong
	rr	borrow married	
	re	we're here	
w witch	**w**	website twins worried win	one once question
	wh	why which whale	
y yacht	**y**	yet year young yoga	
	before **u**	useful uniform	
m monkey	**m**	mountain modern remember email	column comb
	mm	summer swimming	
n nose	**n**	need necklace none any	know knock
	nn	funny dinner	
ŋ singer	**ng**	angry ring along thing bring going	think thank
h house	**h**	hat hate ahead perhaps hire helpful	who whose whole

voiced unvoiced

American ENGLISH FILE

SECOND EDITION

Get everyone talking. In class. Everywhere.

Grammar, Vocabulary, Pronunciation – in each lesson.

Oxford › making **digital** sense

Student Book with LMS-powered Online Practice in all skill areas — Reading, Writing, Listening, and Speaking

Workbook with self-assessment CD-ROM

All-new Video with drama, interviews, and short movies

iTools Presentation Software with Video and Activity Worksheets

Pronunciation app to learn and practice the sounds of English

For Students

- Student Book with Online Practice
- Workbook with iChecker
- Multi-Pack: Student Book/Workbook Split Edition with Online Practice and iChecker
- English File Pronunciation app

For Teachers

- Teacher's Book with Testing Program CD-ROM
- Class DVD
- Class Audio CDs
- iTools Presentation Software DVD-ROM
- Online Class Management

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com

English Sounds Pronunciation Chart based on an original idea and design by Paul Seligson and Carmen Doliz.

CEFR B2 B1 A2

ISBN 978-0-19-477616-5
9 780194 776165